



# **Power Aware User's Manual**

## **ModelSim® SE**

Software Version 10.1

---

**© 2011 Mentor Graphics Corporation**  
**All rights reserved.**

This document contains information that is proprietary to Mentor Graphics Corporation. The original recipient of this document may duplicate this document in whole or in part for internal business purposes only, provided that this entire notice appears in all copies. In duplicating any part of this document, the recipient agrees to make every reasonable effort to prevent the unauthorized use and distribution of the proprietary information.

This document is for information and instruction purposes. Mentor Graphics reserves the right to make changes in specifications and other information contained in this publication without prior notice, and the reader should, in all cases, consult Mentor Graphics to determine whether any changes have been made.

The terms and conditions governing the sale and licensing of Mentor Graphics products are set forth in written agreements between Mentor Graphics and its customers. No representation or other affirmation of fact contained in this publication shall be deemed to be a warranty or give rise to any liability of Mentor Graphics whatsoever.

MENTOR GRAPHICS MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

MENTOR GRAPHICS SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS) ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THIS PUBLICATION OR THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN IT, EVEN IF MENTOR GRAPHICS CORPORATION HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### **RESTRICTED RIGHTS LEGEND 03/97**

U.S. Government Restricted Rights. The SOFTWARE and documentation have been developed entirely at private expense and are commercial computer software provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government or a U.S. Government subcontractor is subject to the restrictions set forth in the license agreement provided with the software pursuant to DFARS 227.7202-3(a) or as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52.227-19, as applicable.

**Contractor/manufacturer is:**

Mentor Graphics Corporation

8005 S.W. Boeckman Road, Wilsonville, Oregon 97070-7777.

Telephone: 503.685.7000

Toll-Free Telephone: 800.592.2210

Website: [www.mentor.com](http://www.mentor.com)

SupportNet: [supportnet.mentor.com/](http://supportnet.mentor.com/)

Send Feedback on Documentation: [supportnet.mentor.com/doc\\_feedback\\_form](http://supportnet.mentor.com/doc_feedback_form)

**TRADEMARKS:** The trademarks, logos and service marks ("Marks") used herein are the property of Mentor Graphics Corporation or other third parties. No one is permitted to use these Marks without the prior written consent of Mentor Graphics or the respective third-party owner. The use herein of a third-party Mark is not an attempt to indicate Mentor Graphics as a source of a product, but is intended to indicate a product from, or associated with, a particular third party. A current list of Mentor Graphics' trademarks may be viewed at: [www.mentor.com/trademarks](http://www.mentor.com/trademarks).

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Getting Started With Low-Power Analysis</b> .....	<b>13</b>
ModelSim Power Aware Simulation .....	13
Where Is Power Aware in Your Design Flow? .....	14
Documentation—Scope and Organization .....	16
Contents of This Manual .....	17
How to Use This Manual .....	17
Related Documentation .....	18
<b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>Concepts for Using Power Aware</b> .....	<b>19</b>
Power Specification File .....	19
Power Aware Modeling .....	20
Modeling Corruption .....	21
Corruption Values .....	21
Corruption Extent .....	22
Modeling Isolation .....	24
Modeling Retention .....	24
Edge-sensitive and Level-sensitive Control of Retention Models .....	25
Modeling Bias .....	27
Bias Mode 1: Corrupt on Change/Bias .....	27
Bias Mode 2: Corrupt All on Activity .....	27
<b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Power Aware Simulation</b> .....	<b>29</b>
Commands Used For Power Aware Simulation .....	29
General Steps for Running Power Aware .....	30
Standard Flow For RTL .....	31
Compile .....	31
Optimize .....	31
Simulate .....	33
Alternate Flows For RTL .....	33
Optimize DUT Separately .....	34
Compile .....	34
Optimize .....	34
Simulate .....	35
Delay Optimization .....	35
Compile .....	35
Optimize .....	35
Simulate .....	36
Implicit Optimization .....	36
Compile .....	36

Optimize .....	36
Simulate .....	36
Inhibit Optimization .....	37
Compile .....	37
Optimize .....	37
Simulate .....	38
PDU-Based Simulation .....	38
Compile .....	38
Optimize .....	38
Simulate .....	39
Standard Flow for Gate-Level Simulation .....	39
Gate-Level Simulation .....	40
UPF in Gate-Level Simulation .....	40
General Steps for Power Aware Gate-Level Simulation .....	40
Liberty Library Models .....	41
Delay Optimization .....	42
Compile .....	42
Optimize .....	42
Simulate .....	43
Delay Optimization Using Liberty Models .....	43
Compile .....	44
Optimize .....	44
Simulate .....	44
Using a Liberty Database .....	45
Usage Notes on Creating a Liberty Dump .....	46
Loading Liberty Dumps .....	46
Debugging Designs Containing Liberty Cells .....	46
Automatic Detection of Power Management Cells .....	47
<b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>Power Aware Reports .....</b>	<b>49</b>
Generating Reports for Power Aware .....	49
How to Generate a Report with vopt -pa_genrpt .....	49
UPF Reports .....	50
UPF Power Intent Report .....	52
Example of UPF File and Power Intent Report .....	54
UPF Static Report .....	56
Power Domain .....	56
Power Switch .....	58
Retention Strategy .....	59
Isolation Strategy .....	60
Level Shifter Strategy .....	62
Power State Tables .....	63
Example of UPF Static Report File .....	65
Static Checking UPF Reports .....	66
Dynamic UPF Report .....	67
Architecture Report .....	68
Power Domain .....	68

## Table of Contents

---

Power Switch .....	70
Retention Strategy .....	72
Isolation Strategy .....	73
Level Shifter Strategy .....	75
Power State Tables (PSTs) .....	77
Sample Power Architecture Report .....	79
Design Elements Report .....	80
Design Element Scopes and Power Domains .....	81
Corrupted Signals .....	81
State Elements .....	82
Retention Signals .....	83
Working With A Design Element Report .....	83
PCF Reports .....	86
PCF Power Intent Report .....	87
PCF Always-On Report .....	87
PCF Corruption Report .....	88
PCF Isolation Report .....	89
PCF Static Checking Report .....	89
Behavioral Element Reporting .....	90
<b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>Automatic Checking .....</b>	<b>91</b>
Static Checking in Power Aware .....	91
Usage Notes for Static Checking .....	92
Debugging Static Checks .....	92
Static Isolation Checks .....	93
Static Level Shifter Checks .....	96
Reporting for a Valid Level Shifter .....	99
Dynamic Checking in Power Aware .....	100
Usage Notes .....	100
Dynamic Retention Checking .....	101
Dynamic Isolation Checking .....	103
Dynamic Level Shifter Checking .....	106
Operating Voltage for Dynamic Checking .....	106
Miscellaneous Dynamic Checking .....	107
Implementing Checking at Gate Level .....	109
Level Shifting for Gate-Level Checking .....	110
Isolation for Gate-Level Checking .....	110
<b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>Visualization of Power Aware Operations .....</b>	<b>113</b>
Power Aware in the Graphical User Interface .....	113
Power Aware Schematic Display .....	113
Top-Down Debugging (From the Test Bench) .....	113
Bottom-Up Debugging (From the Design Under Test) .....	114
Usage Notes .....	115
Schematic Window Visualization for Debugging .....	116
Power Aware Waveform Display .....	119

Using Power Aware Highlighting .....	120
Power State and Transition Display .....	121
Power Aware State Coverage .....	121
Power State Table (PST) States .....	122
Visualization of Power Aware States .....	122
Power Aware State Machines (PASM) .....	123
Differences Between Conventional RTL FSMs and PASMs .....	123
Undefined States in Power Aware State Machines .....	123
Example of PASM in a UPF File .....	123
Using Power Aware State Coverage .....	125
Visualization Of Power Aware State Machines .....	125
Power Aware State Machine Viewer Window .....	126
<b>Appendix A</b>	
<b>Power Aware Commands and Options .....</b>	<b>131</b>
ModelSim Commands Used for Power Aware .....	132
Using -pa_enable and -pa_disable .....	133
Additional Commands You Can Use with Power Aware .....	135
Power Aware Messages .....	139
Usage .....	139
Excluding Design Elements from Power Aware .....	140
Voltage Level-Shifting (Multi-Voltage Analysis) .....	142
Power State Tables .....	143
Example .....	143
Level Shifter Specification .....	143
Reporting .....	143
Threshold Control for Level Shifters .....	144
Level Shifter Instances .....	144
Limitations on Level Shifting .....	144
Restricting Isolation and Level Shifting on a Port .....	145
Isolation and Level Shifting Behavior .....	145
How to Apply the -source and -sink Arguments .....	146
Simulating Designs Containing Macromodels .....	150
Using UPF Commands .....	150
Attributes in RTL .....	152
Liberty File .....	152
Example of Power Intent on a Hard Macro .....	152
UPF Commands .....	153
RTL Attributes .....	153
Liberty File Attributes .....	154
Creating Feedthrough For RTL Conversion Functions .....	155
<b>Appendix B</b>	
<b>Power Aware Checking Specifications .....</b>	<b>157</b>
Level Shifter Checking .....	157
Isolation Checking .....	157
Additional Information on Checking .....	158

**Appendix C**

**Model Construction for Power Aware Simulation ..... 163**

- Guidelines for Writing HDL Models. .... 163
  - Assumptions and Advantages. .... 163
  - Basic Model Structure. .... 163
  - Named Events in Power Aware ..... 164
    - Usage Note for Sequence Requirements ..... 166
  - Attributes. .... 166
    - Retention Cells and Memories ..... 166
    - Isolation Cells. .... 167
    - Level Shifters ..... 167
  - Model Interface Ports ..... 167
  - Example—Register Model ..... 168
  - Example—Corrupt Model ..... 171

**Appendix D**

**UPF Commands and Reference. .... 173**

- Unified Power Format (UPF). .... 173
  - Using a UPF File as Part of Power Aware Simulation ..... 174
- UPF Standards ..... 174
  - Version 1.0 of the UPF Standard ..... 175
  - Version 2.0 of the UPF Standard: IEEE Std 1801-2009. .... 175
- Supported UPF Commands ..... 176
  - add\_domain\_elements. .... 178
  - add\_port\_state. .... 179
  - add\_power\_state ..... 180
  - add\_pst\_state. .... 184
  - associate\_supply\_set. .... 185
  - connect\_logic\_net. .... 186
  - connect\_supply\_net. .... 187
  - connect\_supply\_set. .... 188
  - create\_composite\_domain. .... 189
  - create\_hdl2upf\_vct ..... 196
  - create\_logic\_net ..... 197
  - create\_logic\_port. .... 198
  - create\_power\_domain. .... 199
  - create\_power\_switch. .... 201
  - create\_pst ..... 202
  - create\_supply\_net ..... 203
  - create\_supply\_port ..... 204
  - create\_supply\_set ..... 205
  - create\_upf2hdl\_vct ..... 206
  - load\_simstate\_behavior. .... 207
  - load\_upf ..... 210
  - load\_upf\_protected ..... 211
  - map\_isolation\_cell ..... 212
  - map\_level\_shifter\_cell ..... 215
  - map\_retention\_cell ..... 216

name_format . . . . .	217
save_upf . . . . .	218
set_design_attributes . . . . .	219
set_design_top . . . . .	220
set_domain_supply_net . . . . .	221
set_isolation . . . . .	222
set_isolation_control . . . . .	226
set_level_shifter . . . . .	227
set_partial_on_translation . . . . .	230
set_pin_related_supply . . . . .	233
set_port_attributes . . . . .	234
set_power_switch . . . . .	236
set_retention . . . . .	237
set_retention_control . . . . .	240
set_scope . . . . .	241
set_simstate_behavior . . . . .	242
upf_version . . . . .	247
Supported UPF Package Functions . . . . .	248
Accessing Generate Blocks in UPF . . . . .	249
Limitation . . . . .	249
Supported UPF Attributes . . . . .	249
Specifying Attributes . . . . .	250
Limitations . . . . .	251
Attributes in VHDL or SystemVerilog . . . . .	251
Specifying Supply Nets in UPF . . . . .	251
Format of Assigned Net Values . . . . .	251
Changing the Default Supply State Values for VHDL Models . . . . .	252
Supported UPF Extensions . . . . .	253
Using -pa_upfextensions . . . . .	253
UPF Supply Connections . . . . .	256
Implicit Connections . . . . .	256
Explicit Connections . . . . .	256
Explicit Connections to HDL Ports . . . . .	257
Examples . . . . .	257
Explicit Connections to 1-bit HDL Ports . . . . .	257
Explicit Connections to Supply Ports of Power Switch . . . . .	258
Automatic Connections . . . . .	258
Automatic Connections for Supply Nets . . . . .	259
Automatic Connections for Supply Sets . . . . .	260
Power State Composition . . . . .	261
Determining State Dependency with add_power_state Arguments . . . . .	263
Power State Reporting . . . . .	265
Value Conversion Tables . . . . .	266
Using VCT Commands . . . . .	266
Examples . . . . .	266
Limitations . . . . .	267
Predefined VCTs Supported from the UPF Standard . . . . .	267
Connections Using Value Conversion Tables (VCTs) . . . . .	271
Simulation Semantics for UPF Supply Connections . . . . .	273

## Table of Contents

---

Supply Nets .....	273
Resolving Drivers on a Supply Net .....	274
Example .....	274
Defining Isolation .....	275
Method 1: Isolation is already explicitly present .....	275
Method 2: Isolation needs to be added .....	276
Specifying Isolation Cells .....	276
Limitations .....	278
Defining Retention .....	278
-retention_supply_set .....	278
-no_retention .....	279
-use_retention_as_primary .....	282
<b>Appendix E</b>	
<b>Power Configuration File Reference.....</b>	<b>285</b>
Power Specification File .....	285
Formats .....	285
Using a PCF as Part of Power Aware Verification .....	286
PCF Syntax and Contents .....	287
Basic PCF Statement Types .....	287
Statement Termination .....	287
Header Statement .....	287
Context Statements .....	289
Scope Statement .....	289
Variable Statement .....	290
Include Statement .....	290
Corruption Extent Statement .....	291
Power Statements .....	291
Region Definitions .....	292
Power Model Mapping Statement .....	296
Mapping Statement Precedence .....	299
Specifying Default Model Mappings .....	300
Retention Statement .....	300
Corruption Semantics .....	301
Voltage Domains .....	301
Comments .....	302
Regular Expressions and Variables .....	302
Rule Precedence .....	303
<b>Appendix F</b>	
<b>Supplemental Information.....</b>	<b>305</b>
Power Aware Verification of ARM-Based Designs .....	305
Abstract .....	305
Introduction .....	306
Active Power Management .....	306
Power Management Techniques .....	306
Power Management Specification .....	307
Power Management Architecture .....	308

Operating Modes .....	308
Power Domains .....	309
Power Distribution .....	310
Power States .....	312
Isolation and Level Shifting .....	312
State Retention .....	314
Power Managed Behavior .....	314
Power Control Logic .....	315
Power Aware Verification Flow .....	315
Verifying the Power Management Architecture .....	316
Verifying Power Managed Behavior .....	317
Verifying Power Control Logic .....	318
Summary .....	318
Acknowledgements .....	319
References .....	319



---

# List of Tables

---

Table 2-1. Corruption Extents and Behaviors .....	22
Table 4-1. Generating UPF Reports for Power Aware .....	51
Table 4-2. Generating PCF Reports for Power Aware .....	87
Table 5-1. Static Isolation Checks .....	93
Table 5-2. Static Level Shifter Checks .....	96
Table 5-3. Dynamic Retention Checks .....	101
Table 5-4. Dynamic Isolation Checks .....	103
Table 5-5. Dynamic Level Shifter Checks .....	106
Table 5-6. Miscellaneous Dynamic Checks .....	108
Table A-1. Power Aware Arguments for vopt .....	132
Table A-2. Power Aware Arguments for vsim .....	133
Table A-3. Power Aware Actions for vopt -pa_enable and -pa_disable .....	134
Table B-1. Static and Dynamic Checks for Power Domain Characteristics .....	158
Table D-1. Supported UPF Commands .....	176
Table D-2. UPF Commands Not Currently Supported .....	176
Table D-3. Supported UPF Package Functions for VHDL .....	248
Table D-4. Supported UPF Package Functions for SystemVerilog .....	248
Table D-5. Supported UPF Attributes .....	249
Table D-6. Power Aware Actions for vopt -pa_upfextensions .....	254

# Chapter 1

## Getting Started With Low-Power Analysis

---

### ModelSim Power Aware Simulation

---

**Note**

The functionality described in this chapter requires an additional license feature for ModelSim SE. Refer to the section "[License Feature Names](#)" in the Installation and Licensing Guide for more information, or contact your Mentor Graphics sales representative.

---

Some designs require that you minimize dynamic and static power consumption. A common low-power design technique—power gating—involves switching off certain portions of the design when their operation is not needed and restoring power when operation is needed again. ModelSim provides Power Aware analysis for VHDL or Verilog designs by using power gating for both register transfer level (PA-RTL) and gate-level (PA-GL) analysis.

To apply Power Aware analysis, you use your conventional ModelSim simulation flow, along with some power-specific options to the `vopt` and `vsim` commands and a power configuration side file that identifies the low-power design intent.

With Power Aware, you can perform functional verification of the use of power gating with or without retention capability. Different types of power gating design structures can be verified, such as:

- Multiple switchable power domains with a single voltage
- Multiple switchable power domains with different (fixed) voltages per domain

These power gating structures reduce the static/leakage power.

To verify these structures, you create a side file ([Power Specification File](#)) that defines the low-power design intent, which includes the following:

- Element instances that belong to a power domain and control expressions that turn the power domain ON and OFF.
- The retention mapping information and the retention controls that specify when to save and when to restore data in storage and sequential elements within a power domain that has retention capabilities.

## Where Is Power Aware in Your Design Flow?

Before you begin to use Power Aware to perform a low-power analysis on your RTL design, you should evaluate where you are in your overall design flow. [Figure 1-1](#) shows an approximation of a typical design sequence and where Power Aware might occur in that sequence.

Before running Power Aware, you should have worked through the following stages of your design flow:

- Design creation
- RTL architecture
- Formal verification
- Definition of power intent

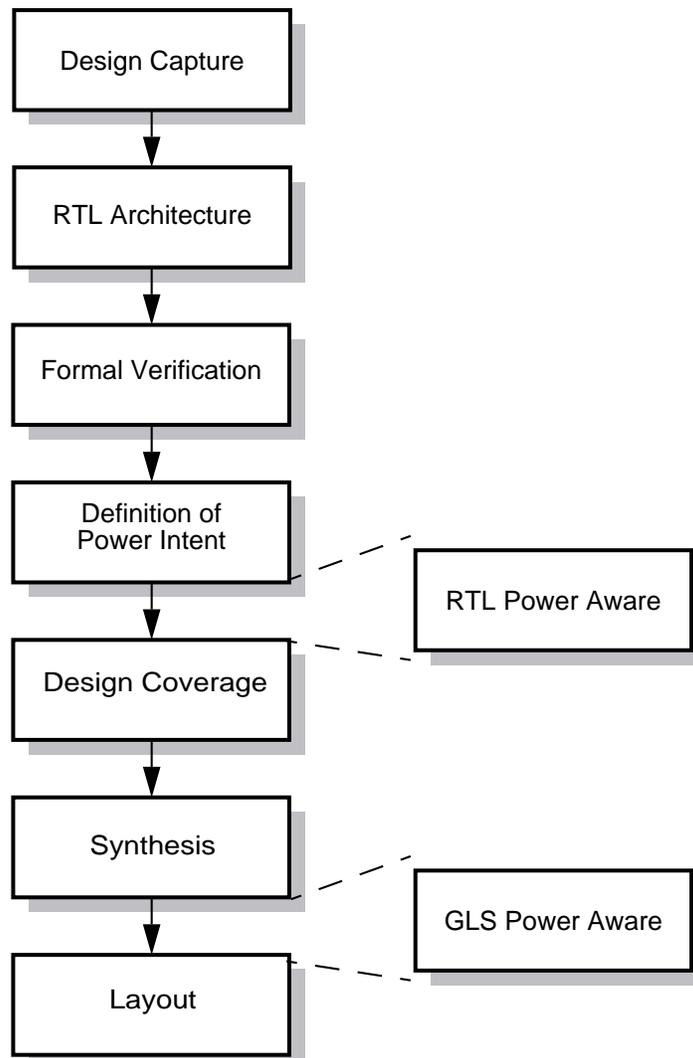
After running a Power Aware RTL simulation, you would typically use the results to make appropriate topology or performance changes to your power-sensitive design blocks. After a gate-level simulation (GLS), you would typically make library cell changes based on performance characteristics.

The scope of Power Aware as a low-power solution spans multiple manifestation of design architecture.

- **Power Aware Simulation** — Simulation that includes active power management elements and their behavior. The power management architecture is typically specified in UPF; the behavior of those elements is inferred from the UPF specification. This relates specifically to Questa Power Aware Simulation (PASim).
- **Power Aware Verification** — Collaborative usage of various products and methods for verifying that a design operates correctly under active power management. These include power aware simulation (for verifying the correct operation of the power management architecture), formal verification (for verifying correct operation of power control logic), and hardware/software co-verification (for verifying that software power control interacts correctly with power control logic). This relates to all of the components of the Questa Verification Platform that can be used for Power Aware Verification, including Questa PASim, Questa ADMS, Questa Formal, Questa Codelink, and Questa VM.
- **Power Efficient Design** — Design of hardware that involves active power management. This includes design decisions involved in allocating power budget, partitioning the design into power domains, and defining the power management architecture, the power

control logic, and the power control software, as well as products used for verification and implementation of such designs. This relates to the entire range of Mentor products that are involved in the design, verification, and implementation of low power IP, chips, and systems.

**Figure 1-1. Typical Location of Power Aware Simulation in Design Flow**



## Documentation—Scope and Organization

Power Aware simulation augments normal HDL simulation capabilities with the ability to specify, model, and simulate the effects of active power management logic that will be added to the design during implementation.

The success of applying Power Aware depends on understanding the structure of your design and having the ability to run ModelSim, plus—more generally—your goals of using simulation and verification software products (such as ModelSim).

The main purpose of this manual is to provide basic usage and reference information on how to run a Power Aware simulation in ModelSim. The primary focus is on how to define the power intent of your design and then apply your conventional ModelSim simulation flow to verify power gating behavior.

Note that there are some areas related to Power Aware operation that this manual is not intended to cover:

- UPF standards — The [UPF Commands and Reference](#) appendix lists the UPF commands and arguments that are currently supported for both v1.0 and v2.0. However, complete usage information from those standards is not duplicated in this manual.
- Basic and advanced ModelSim usage — Please refer to the other manuals of ModelSim documentation for information on operations related to Power Aware simulation, such as: command usage, the graphical user interface (GUI), design optimization, waveform analysis, and finite state machines.
- Power design — Reporting power estimation or creating an RTL architecture for optimized power implementation.

Specifically, the scope of this manual falls into the following broad areas:

### Usage

- Terminology definitions
- Basic operating instructions for Power Aware simulation
- ModelSim commands specific to Power Aware
- Differences between RTL and GLS
- UPF commands for the power specification file
- Reporting of results

## Design

- General discussion of low-power design and analysis
- HDL models used for Power Aware analysis

## Flow

- General discussion of low-power analysis as part of overall design flow
- The distinctions between RTL and gate-level simulations, and the advantages of each at different places in the flow

# Contents of This Manual

This manual contains both an introductory overview of the Power aware simulation capabilities and detailed reference information about power aware simulation features and usage.

- Chapters 2 through 6 provide an introductory overview of basic usage.
- Appendices A through F provide more detailed reference information.

# How to Use This Manual

If you are just beginning to learn about power aware simulation, read the following chapter:

- [Concepts for Using Power Aware](#)

If you are looking for an overview of Power Aware simulation capabilities and how they are used, read the following chapter:

- [Power Aware Simulation](#)

If you are looking for an overview of the information provided by Questa Sim during power aware simulation, to help you understand how active power management is working in your design, identify problem areas, and track what has been verified, read the following chapters:

- [Power Aware Reports](#)
- [Automatic Checking](#)
- [Visualization of Power Aware Operations](#)
- [UPF Commands and Reference](#)

For more detailed reference information about specific topics such as UPF and its use, Power Aware simulation commands and flows, report formats, messages, read the appropriate appendices of this manual.

## Related Documentation

Other documents that may be useful for understanding Power Aware simulation include the following:

- *ModelSim User's Manual*

This manual explains how to use ModelSim for simulation of hardware designs. It contains descriptions of basic Questa SIM usage, especially simulation, optimization, debugging, assertions, and GUI visualization of design source, schematics, waveforms.

- *ModelSim Reference Manual*

This manual contains a comprehensive listing and description of ModelSim commands, arguments, and values.

- *ModelSim Tutorial*

This manual presents an introductory tutorial on the use of ModelSim for Power Aware simulation. It provides a simple exercise on how to run a Power Aware simulation on RTL design data for the Interleaver example provided as part of the ModelSim installation. This exercise includes creating a UPF power specification file, defining isolation and retention for the power domain, and evaluating simulation results (waveforms and reports).

- *IEEE 1801™-2009 Standard for Design and Verification of Low Power Integrated Circuits*

This IEEE standard defines the Unified Power Formal (UPF), a notation used for specifying power intent for HDL designs.

# Chapter 2

## Concepts for Using Power Aware

---

This chapter provides a brief description of basic usage elements for running Power Aware simulation in the following sections:

- [Power Specification File](#)
- [Power Aware Modeling](#)
- [Modeling Corruption](#)
- [Modeling Isolation](#)
- [Modeling Retention](#)
- [Modeling Bias](#)

### Power Specification File

To perform Power Aware verification, you need to provide a power specification file that defines the low-power specification of the design. A power specification file can be written in either of the following formats:

- **Unified Power Format (UPF)** — The Accellera standard format for low-power specification, proposed by P1801 Low Power Working Group of the IEEE. This is the recommended format for low-power specification for Power Aware simulations. For more information on this format, refer to [Unified Power Format \(UPF\)](#).
- **Power Configuration File (PCF)** — A preliminary file format specific to ModelSim that was developed to meet the specific needs of various customers and semiconductor companies. For more information on this format, refer to [PCF Syntax and Contents](#).

The power specification file is the key to the verification flow using Power Aware. This file provides the following information required to overlay verification with the power control network and Power Aware functionality:

- Power regions, voltage domains, and power islands
- Retention sequential models, their type, and the regions they are in (including nodebug, encrypted, and protected regions)
- State and output corruption behavior in power-down situations
- Power control signals and the portions of the design they control

The power specification file is designed to capture all Power Aware characteristics of the design at the RTL (or higher) in a compact form that can be easily used by the simulator.

## Power Aware Modeling

Verilog and VHDL both make the fundamental assumption that all logic is powered on at the beginning of the simulation and remains powered on throughout the simulation. Power Aware simulation removes this assumption. To do so, additional logic is included in the simulation model. This additional logic does the following:

- Defines the power management architecture to be imposed on the design
- Implements the behavior of power management elements
- Adapts the behavior of the design itself to reflect changes in power

To run Power Aware simulation, the normal build process for constructing the simulation model is modified so that this additional logic can be added.

ModelSim provides default Verilog models for the behavior of power management elements and the behavior of the design under active power management. The default models are provided in your installation directory at the following location:

```
<install_dir>/verilog_src/upf_pack
```

With the model mapping capability defined in the power specification file, you can simulate power on/ power off and retention using a model that accurately describes the power down/power up sequence, power down/up behavior, as well as the save and restore sequence and behavior based on actual silicon. ModelSim provides Power Aware analysis for both Register Transfer Level (RTL) and Gate-Level simulation (GLS). Simulation at both levels uses the standard [Unified Power Format \(UPF\)](#) power specification file to represent the power intent.

Note that a Power Aware model does not contribute to the normal functioning of the circuit, which is what the RTL or Gate-Level model does. Instead, the Power Aware model overlays Power Aware behavior over normal operations, based on inputs to the Power Aware control signals (PWR, RET, or SAVE/RESTORE).



It is also possible for you to construct custom models for these behaviors. Refer to [Appendix C, Model Construction for Power Aware Simulation](#) for more information on Power Aware modeling.

---

## Modeling Corruption

Corruption means the change of a signal from its current value to a corrupted value when a power domain changes to the OFF state.

Corruption refers to the situation where the value of a signal becomes unpredictable when the power supply for the element driving that signal is disconnected, changes to OFF, or drops below some threshold. Corruption of a signal is represented by assigning a particular value to the signal. The corruption value depends upon the type of the signal and is user-definable. Depending upon the power intent format used and other control settings, the extent to which corruption is applied may also vary.

When a design element is turned off, every sequential element within the powered-down element and every signal driven from within the powered-down element is corrupted. As long as the power remains off, no additional activity takes place within the powered down instance—all processes within the powered down element become inactive, regardless of their original sensitivity list. Events that were scheduled before the power was turned off and whose target is inside a powered down instance have no effect.

When a design element is turned on (restored), corruption of sequential elements and signals within the powered down element ends.

Continuous assignments once again become sensitive to changes to their righthand side expressions, and other combinational processes (such as an `always_comb` block in SystemVerilog) resume their normal sensitivity list operation. All continuous assignments and other combinational processes are evaluated at power-up time to ensure that constant values and current input values are properly propagated. Sequential elements will be re-evaluated on the next clock cycle after power up.

## Corruption Values

Signals are corrupted by assigning them their default initial value (such as X for 4-state types). Default corruption values for Verilog and SystemVerilog are:

- 4-state logic types: 'X'
- 2-state logic types: '0'
- SystemVerilog user-defined types: SystemVerilog default value

Default corruption values for VHDL are:

- Logic types: 'X'
- Real types: 0.0
- User-defined types: `LEFT

## Corruption Extent

You can specify corruption extent for a Power Aware analysis to any of the following:

- Outputs only
- Outputs and sequential elements
- Outputs, sequential elements, and internal wires
- Sequential and combinational elements



### Caution

Changing the default corruption semantics may alter the simulation behavior and is not recommended—you should make changes to corruption semantics only if you are sure about the power domain requirements of your design.

The following are examples of observable changes in simulation behavior:

- Changing from `-pa_ce=sc` ( default ) to `-pa_ce=o` will not corrupt the sequential elements. This will result in immediate re-evaluation, even in cases where a port is driven by a register deep within hierarchy.
- Changing from `-pa_ce=sc` ( default ) to `-pa_ce=osw` will corrupt feed-throughs as well and may give a false impression to insert isolation cells.
- Changing from `-pa_ce=sc` ( default ) to `-pa_ce=os` will not corrupt combinatorial logic. This means if an isolated port is internally driven by a combinatorial logic, then it will give a false impression that isolation may not be required at that port, since it is not corrupted.

Table 2-1 gives a summary of these extents and their behavior for power off and on (restored).

**Table 2-1. Corruption Extents and Behaviors**

Corruption Extent	Power Level	Behavior
Outputs only	Off	Corrupt output ports of the instances that are at domain boundary.  Use <code>vopt -pa_ce o</code> to force all domains to have output only corruption extent.
	On	Release the output ports of the instance at domain boundary. The signals that act as combinatorial logic or latches will be re-evaluated at power-up. The signals that act as flip flops will be re-evaluated at next active clock edge.

**Table 2-1. Corruption Extents and Behaviors (cont.)**

Corruption Extent	Power Level	Behavior
Outputs and Sequential	Off	<p>Corrupt outputs of the instances and all sequential elements within a power domain.</p> <p>Use <code>vopt -ce os</code> to create <code>_power_domain</code> in UPF whose corruption extent is outputs and sequential elements.</p> <p>Use <code>vopt -pa_ce os</code> or <code>vopt -pa_all</code> to force all power domains to this corruption mode.</p>
	On	<p>Release all corrupted values.</p> <p>Re-evaluation of the combinational signal and latches must occur.</p> <p>Register evaluation occurs on the next control edge of clock</p>
Outputs, Sequential, Wires	Off	<p>Corrupt outputs of the instances and all internal wires and sequential elements within a power domain.</p>
	On	<p>Release all corrupted values.</p> <p>Re-evaluation of the combinational signal and latches must occur.</p> <p>Register evaluation occurs on the next control edge of clock.</p>
Sequential and Combinational	Off	<p>Corrupt all signals, wires, registers that act as a sequential and combinational logic in the power domain.</p>
	On	<p>Release all signals, wires, registers that are corrupted, as specified for Off.</p> <p>These signals that act as a combinational logic and latches will be re-evaluated at power-up.</p> <p>These signals that act as a flip-flop will be re-evaluated at next active edge.</p>

## Modeling Isolation

Isolation is used to separate signals that originate in a design element with power off from a part of the design that has power on and that can still read the signals from the powered down element.

---

### Note



If the power net is turned off for a specified isolation portion of the design, the isolation output is corrupted regardless of power domain states.

---

A particular domain may be powered off while another domain is operating in normal mode. Isolation ensures the following:

- Powered-down regions do not drive unknown values into the rest of the design (isolation on outputs).
- The rest of the design receives values that are functionally correct (isolation on inputs).

The UPF Specification of isolation strategy includes

- Specification of clamp value
- Isolation Power net(s)
- Isolation control

In UPF, you specify the conditions under which isolation is required as well as the clamp value:

- Use `set_isolation` and `set_isolation_control` commands to determine which ports are to be isolated and where in the logic hierarchy the resulting isolation cells are to be created.
- Clamp value can be 1, 0, Z, latch, any, or <value>—only 0, 1, Z, and latch are supported in ModelSim.
- Control port can be active high or low.

## Modeling Retention

Retention consists of saving the value of a design element in a power domain prior to switching off the power to that element, then restoring that value after power to the element is switched back on.

The `set_retention` and `set_retention_control` UPF commands determine which registers in a power domain need to be retention registers and set the corresponding save and restore signals for the retention registers.

In UPF, you specify a retention strategy where state preservation is required:

- Latch, Flip-flop, or Memory retention
- Retention power supply
- Retention controls to trigger retention

The general sequence for specifying retention in UPF is:

1. Define your power domains

```
create_power_domain
```

2. Specify the retention strategy—a set of registers in the domain requiring retention

```
set_retention
```

3. Specify the retention control signals for the strategy

```
set_retention_control
```

During simulation, each register that is to be retained creates two additional processes: one is sensitive to the save signal in accordance to the save sense and the second process is sensitive to the restore signal in accordance to the restore sense. A retention memory is also created for each sequential element that needs to be retained.

The `set_retention` and `set_retention_control` commands determine which registers in a power domain need to be retention registers and sets the corresponding save and restore signals for the retention registers.

## Edge-sensitive and Level-sensitive Control of Retention Models

ModelSim provides default Verilog models for retention cells that support both edge-sensitive and level-sensitive detection of input control signals for save and restore functions. Note that there are separate models for single and dual control signals:

- Single control signal — uses opposite (inverted) edge or level of one input signal to initiate save and restore.
- Dual control signals — uses edge or level of two different input signals to initiate save and restore.

The level-sensitive model accurately duplicates the behavior of a level-sensitive Liberty cell: based on the save/restore level, the retention register switches between normal and retention operations.

- When save is active, normal register behavior occurs—a balloon latch keeps latching the output of the register.

- when restore is active, the retention behavior occurs—the data value (D) of the register has no impact on output and the retained value (in the balloon latch) is transferred to the register output. The balloon latch does not save any new value during this interval.

## Automatic Model Selection

Based on how you specify retention controls in the UPF file, ModelSim automatically selects edge-sensitive or level-sensitive model for retention. Automatic selection occurs according to the following conditions:

- If both `save_signal` and `restore_signal` are level-sensitive and same signal is used for both: use Single control, level-sensitive model.
- If both `save_signal` and `restore_signal` are level-sensitive and two different signals are used for save and restore: use Dual control, level-sensitive model.
- If any control signal (save or restore) is edge-sensitive and same signal is used for both save and restore: use Single control, edge-sensitive model.
- If any control signal (save or restore) is edge-sensitive and two different signals are used for save and restore: use Dual control, edge-sensitive model.

## Level-sensitive Retention Model Protocol

For the following UPF retention command with level-sensitive controls:

```
set_retention -domain PD1 -save_signal {save_restore high}  
-restore_signal {save_restore low}
```

According to v2.0 of the UPF standard for level-sensitive UPF control, the save or restore events are defined as trailing edge of the level-sensitive event. So, for this command, the register output will be saved when `save_restore` goes from high to low (save event). And the retained value will be transferred to register output at the low to high (restore event) transition of `save_restore` signal.

Following protocol is followed by level-sensitive model:

- In save phase, normal register operation happen (D -> Q at clock edges). At save event (defined above), register output gets latched.
- In restore phase, D has no effect on Q, so Q gets the retained value. At restore event, normal operation resumes and Q will get new value of D from next active edge of clock.
- Register output gets corrupted when the primary power or retention power goes off.

- On primary power up (and also if retention power is on), retention behavior or normal behavior of register resumes.
- Retention power off corrupts the register output and the retained value, regardless of the primary power.
- For dual control signals, the retained value and register value both get corrupted when save and restore signals are simultaneously active.

## Modeling Bias

ModelSim provides support for different bias modes that allow for multi-voltage designs. In the power specification file, you can specify bias control signals on a power domain to simulate bias functionality. When you use a bias mode, the power domain is powered on but running with reduced functionality. Any activity inside the domain will corrupt the contents of the domain.

Implementing a bias mode performs retention behavior without inserting explicit retention registers. This saves in area usage and also helps to reduce the leakage power. However, the electrical characteristics of the domain during this period prohibit normal logic functioning and thus the timing closure is not met. Therefore, you would want to catch any activity in the domain and see the corrupted values of the logic cone in the Wave window.

There are two modes of bias operation, as described below.

### Bias Mode 1: Corrupt on Change/Bias

In this mode, only the cone of logic that is driven by the active signal gets corrupted. Basically, ModelSim corrupts the signal on which activity is detected, then that corruption gets propagated to the logic cone driven by that signal.

You can specify the boolean expression that indicates when the bias mode is entered by using the 'BIAS (boolean\_expr)' keyword in your UPF file with the `create_power_domain -bias {boolean_expr}` command.

#### Example

```
create_power_domain -bias pdd /tb/top, /tb/pg BIAS (/tb/bias )
```

### Bias Mode 2: Corrupt All on Activity

In this mode, all the signals of the domain get corrupted when there is any activity on any of the signal or the inputs to the domain.

### Example

```
create_power_domain -bias pdd /tb/top, /tb/pg CORRUPT_ALL_ON_ACT (/tb/bias  
)
```

# Chapter 3

## Power Aware Simulation

---

This chapter describes how to use ModelSim commands to run optimization and simulation for a Power Aware analysis.

### Commands Used For Power Aware Simulation

You invoke Power Aware simulation with the same commands used for conventional ModelSim simulation, although the optimization (`vopt`) and simulation (`vsim`) commands have additional arguments.

For conventional ModelSim simulation, you use the following commands:

- `vlog` or `vcom` — Used to compile Verilog, SystemVerilog, or VHDL source code. For Power Aware simulation, these commands are used in the same manner.
- `vopt` — Used to enable or disable optimization in the HDL design. For Power Aware simulation, the `vopt` command also processes the power intent defined in a power specification (UPF) file.
- `vsim` — Used to run simulation on the HDL design. For Power Aware simulation, the `vsim` command also applies power aware simulation semantics to the HDL design.

For Power Aware simulation, you use the same commands, but with certain additional arguments for `vopt` to turn on power intent processing and for `vsim` to enable Power Aware simulation:

- `vopt` — For Power Aware, the `vopt` command elaborates a supplemental, alternate top-level design in Verilog. This alternate design contains the Power Aware information that you apply to simulation using the `vsim` command.

Note that you can still use `vopt` to enable or disable optimization on the actual design (in conjunction with `vsim`).

- `vsim` — For Power Aware, the `vsim` command uses the additional files created by the `vopt` run, including the synthesized top. However, because `vsim` knows the names of these files and they are loaded automatically, you do not need to specify them when running `vsim`. Thus, there is no relationship between the optimized top generated by `vopt` and the top-level design unit used by `vsim`.

**i** For a listing of the Power Aware arguments provided for these commands, refer to [ModelSim Commands Used for Power Aware](#).

---

As shown in [Figure 1-1](#), you can run a Power Aware simulation at two different points in your design development:

- RTL level (before synthesis)
- Gate-level (after synthesis)

Moreover, by varying the arguments for the `vopt` and `vsim` commands, you can run a different Power Aware analysis that is specific to each level. This matches the Power Aware analysis to the level of abstraction of your design (see [Where Is Power Aware in Your Design Flow?](#)). For example, you would use gate-level simulation (PA-GLS) to quickly verify the Power Aware functionality after synthesis in order to identify functional defects that were not detected at the RTL level.

## Related Topic

[Where Is Power Aware in Your Design Flow?](#)

## General Steps for Running Power Aware

1. Map your libraries:

```
vlib <library_name>  
vmap work <library_name>
```

2. Compile vendor-supplied Verilog models:

```
vlog <vendor_model_files>
```

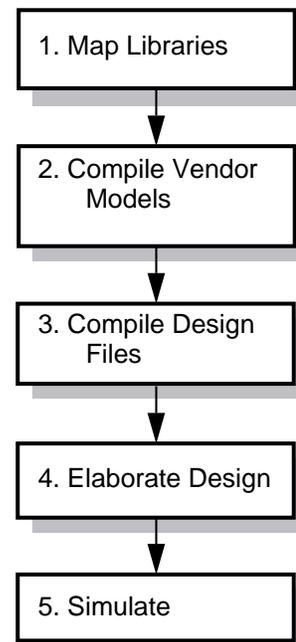
These models contain Power Aware information supplied by your vendor.

3. Compile your VHDL or Verilog design files (ignore statements within `translate_off/on` and `synthesis_off/on` pragmas):

```
vcom <design_files>  
vlog <design_files>
```

4. Elaborate your top-level design to detect sequential elements, such as flip-flops, latches, and memories:

```
vopt <design_top> -pa_upf <upf_file>
```



This creates a special supplemental copy of your top-level design, specifically intended for use with Power Aware. In addition, there are multiple methods of using the `vopt` command to determine how to optimize a Power Aware simulation. Refer to [Optimize](#) for information on different ways of using `vopt` and `vsim`.

5. Simulate the Power Aware version of your design.

```
vsim -pa <design_top>
```

## Standard Flow For RTL

This section describes the standard command flow used to perform Power Aware simulation for RTL designs. This flow consists of the following sequence of operations:

1. [Compile](#)
2. [Optimize](#)
3. [Simulate](#)

### Compile

Compile your design by running either the `vcom` (for VHDL) or the `vlog` (for Verilog) command as you would for any VHDL or Verilog/SystemVerilog design.

---

#### Note



Do not use the `-novopt` argument with either `vcom` or `vlog` when you compile for Power Aware simulation.

---

For more information on using `vcom`, refer to “[Compiling a VHDL Design—the `vcom` Command](#)” in the User’s Manual.

For more information on using `vlog`, refer to “[Invoking the Verilog Compiler](#)” in the User’s Manual.

### Usage

```
vcom <files>  
vlog <files>
```

### Optimize

After you compile the design, use the `vopt` command with the following arguments:

- `-pa_upf` Specifies the name of the UPF file containing the power intent specification. ModelSim reads the UPF file and generates information required to run Power Aware simulation. You can write the UPF file in one of two ways: either with respect to the top of the design-under-test (DUT), or with respect to the top of the testbench (TB). If the UPF file is written with respect to the DUT top, then you must specify `vopt -pa_top <pathname>` to specify the path from the top module down to and including the DUT instance. See [Example 1](#) and [Example 2](#), below.
- `-o` Specifies the name for the resultant optimized design.

Note that you can also specify any other `vopt` arguments for conventional optimization to create the optimized design. This sequence is similar to the conventional [three-step optimization flow](#).

### Example 1

If the UPF file is written with respect to the top of the design-under-test (DUT), and this module is instantiated in the testbench top module TB as TB.dut, then you need to invoke `vopt` as follows:

```
vopt TB -pa_top TB/dut -pa_upf DUT.upf [other vopt args]
```

where

- TB — the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- TB/dut — the path from the test bench top down to the design top instance.
- DUT.upf — the name of the UPF file written with respect to the DUT top-level module.
- [other args] — any other `vopt` arguments used to control optimization.

### Example 2

If the UPF file is written with respect to the TB top, then you need to invoke `vopt` as follows:

```
vopt TB_top -pa_upf TB.upf -o SimModel [other vopt args]
```

where

- TB\_top — the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- TB.upf — the name of the UPF file written with respect to TB\_top.
- SimModel — the name of the simulation-ready output file to be generated .
- [other args] — any other `vopt` arguments used to control optimization.

---

**Note**

To use a PCF file instead of UPF file for these examples, use the `vopt -pa_cfg` argument instead of `vopt -pa_upf`.

---

## Usage Notes

Power Aware simulation involves register/latch detection in order to identify state elements in the design that need to be corrupted and may need to have their state retained during power down. However, your design may contain code that is not at the appropriate level of abstraction for register/latch detection, so you may need to exclude such code from power intent processing. Also, you may want to exclude parts of the design from Power Aware simulation for other reasons (see “[Excluding Design Elements from Power Aware](#)” in Appendix A).

ModelSim provides additional `vopt` arguments for Power Aware that you can use when generating the optimized design. For more information on these arguments, refer to “[Using vopt for Power Aware Simulation](#)” in the Reference Manual.

A simulation model created for Power Aware simulation contains specific Power Aware simulation artifacts and cannot be used for normal simulation.

## Simulate

After you compile and optimize the design, run the `vsim` command on the optimized design using the `-pa` argument to perform Power Aware simulation on it.

### Example

```
vsim SimModel -pa [other vsim args]
```

where

- `SimModel` — the name of the simulation-ready output file generated by `vopt`.
- `-pa` — invokes simulation in Power Aware mode.
- `[other args]` — any other `vsim` arguments used to control simulation.

## Alternate Flows For RTL

This section describes alternate command flows that you can use for Power Aware simulation:

- [Optimize DUT Separately](#)
- [Delay Optimization](#)
- [Inhibit Optimization](#)

- [PDU-Based Simulation](#)

## Optimize DUT Separately

In conventional simulation, it is often desirable to optimize the design-under-test (DUT) separately from the test bench, so that you can use the same optimized DUT model with multiple test benches. This approach can also be applied to Power Aware simulation, provided that the DUT appears at the same location in each test bench.

---

### Note



This flow is not compatible with Power Aware debugging.

---

## Compile

There are no compilation differences for this flow, so you can run the `vcom` or `vlog` command on your design as with any other simulation.

## Optimize

To implement this flow, run the `vopt` command with the following arguments to elaborate and optimize the DUT and apply power intent to it:

- `-pa_prefix`
- `-pa_upf`
- `-o`

## Example

```
vopt DUT_top \  
-pa_prefix <TB_path> \  
-pa_upf DUT.upf \  
-o SimModel \  
[other vopt args]
```

where

- `DUT_top` — is the name of the top-level module of the design under test.
- `<TB_path>` — is the path from the test bench top down to the design top instance.
- `DUT.upf` — is the name of the UPF file written with respect to the DUT top-level module.
- `SimModel` — the name of the simulation-ready output file to be generated.
- `[other vopt args]` — any other `vopt` arguments used to control optimization.

## Simulate

To implement simulation for this flow, run the vsim command on the test bench using the -pa argument to invoke Power Aware simulation.

### Example

```
vsim SimModel -pa [other vsim args]
```

where

- SimModel — the name of the simulation-ready output file generated by vopt.
- -pa — invokes simulation in Power Aware mode.
- [other vsim args] — any other vsim arguments used to control simulation.

## Delay Optimization

In conventional simulation, you can perform what is referred to as a [two-step optimization flow](#). In this flow, you do not use the -o argument for vopt, so that optimization is not performed (delayed) until you invoke the vsim command, at which point it is done implicitly. This delayed optimization flow is also supported for Power Aware simulation—primarily to satisfy backward compatibility with previous releases where it was the only flow available.

## Compile

There are no compilation differences for this flow, so you can run the vcom or vlog command on your design as with any other simulation.

## Optimize

To implement this flow, run the vopt command on the test bench top with the -pa\_upf argument and TB.upf but without the -o argument. ModelSim reads and processes the UPF file without generating an optimized output.

### Example

```
vopt TB_top \  
-pa_upf TB.upf \  
[other vopt args]
```

where

- TB\_top — is the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- TB.upf — is the name of the test bench file written with respect to the test bench top-level module.

- [other vopt args] — any other vopt arguments used to control the simulation.

## Simulate

To implement simulation for this flow, run the `vsim` command on the test bench using only the `-pa` argument to invoke Power Aware simulation. When you invoke `vsim` on the test bench top module rather than on an optimized simulation model, it will implicitly optimize the design before running Power Aware simulation.

### Example

```
vsim TB_top -pa [other vsim args]
```

where

- `TB_top` — is the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- `-pa` — invokes simulation in Power Aware mode.
- [other vsim args] — any other vsim arguments used to control simulation.

## Implicit Optimization

In conventional simulation, you can perform simulation without optimizing the design at all. This inhibited optimization flow is also supported for Power Aware simulation. In this flow, you do not invoke separate vopt step for UPF processing or optimization—it is implicitly invoked from `vsim` using the `-voptargs` argument.

## Compile

There are no compilation differences for this flow, so you can run the `vcom` or `vlog` command on your design as with any other simulation.

## Optimize

There is no explicit optimization step (you do not invoke the `vopt` command).

## Simulate

To implement simulation for this flow, run the `vsim` command on the test bench using the `-pa` argument, along with the `-voptargs` argument (specifying a UPF file) to invoke Power Aware simulation. When you invoke `vsim` on the test bench top module, it implicitly performs UPF processing and optimizes the design before beginning the Power Aware simulation.

## Example

```
vsim TB_top -pa -voptargs="-pa_upf test.upf <other vopt args>"  
  <other vsim args>
```

where

- `TB_top` — is the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- `-pa` — invokes simulation in Power Aware mode.
- `-voptargs` — instructs ModelSim to apply arguments for the `vopt` command. For this flow, you specify `-pa_upf <filename>` to invoke `vopt`. Note that the `-pa_prefix` and `-pa_bbox` arguments are meaningless here and have no effect.
- `[other vsim args]` — any other `vsim` arguments used to control simulation.

## Inhibit Optimization

In conventional simulation, you can perform simulation without optimizing the design at all. This inhibited optimization flow is also supported for Power Aware simulation.

In this flow, you do not use the `-o` argument for `vopt`, so that optimization is not performed until you invoke the `vsim` command, at which point you can use the `-novopt` argument to prevent optimization from being performed for the simulation session.

## Compile

There are no compilation differences for this flow, so you can run the `vcom` or `vlog` command on your design as with any other simulation.

## Optimize

To implement this flow, run the `vopt` command on the test bench top with the `-pa_upf` argument and `TB.upf` but without the `-o` argument. ModelSim reads and processes the UPF file without generating an optimized output.

## Example

```
vopt TB_top \  
-pa_upf TB.upf \  
[other vopt args]
```

where

- `TB_top` — is the name of the top-level module of the test bench.

- TB.upf — is the name of the test bench file written with respect to the test bench top-level module.
- [other vopt args] — any other vopt arguments used to control the simulation.

## Simulate

To implement simulation for this flow, run the vsim command on the test bench using the -pa and -novopt arguments to invoke Power Aware simulation with no optimization on the design.

### Example

```
vsim TB_top -pa -novopt [other vsim args]
```

where

- TB\_top — is the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- -pa — invokes simulation in Power Aware mode.
- -novopt — instructs ModelSim to disable optimization.
- [other vsim args] — any other vsim arguments used to control simulation.

## PDU-Based Simulation

In conventional simulation, it is often desirable to optimize the design-under-test (DUT) separately from the test bench, so that you can use the same optimized DUT model (pre-optimized design unit, PDU) with multiple test benches. You can also apply this approach to Power Aware simulation, provided that the DUT appears at the same location in each test bench.

## Compile

There are no compilation differences for this flow, so you can run the vcom or vlog command on your design as with any other simulation.

## Optimize

To implement this flow, run the vopt command with the following arguments to elaborate the DUT and apply power intent to it:

- -pa\_defertop
- -pa\_upf

## Example

```
vopt DUT_top \  
-pa_defertop \  
-pa_upf DUT.upf  
[other vopt args]
```

where

- DUT\_top — is the name of the top-level module of the design under test.
- DUT.upf — is the name of the UPF file written with respect to the DUT top-level module.
- [other vsim args] — any other vsim arguments used to control simulation.

## Simulate

To implement simulation for this flow, run the vsim command on the test bench using the -pa\_top and -pa arguments to invoke Power Aware simulation.

## Example

```
vsim TB_top -pa_top <DUT_path> -pa [other vsim args]
```

where

- TB\_top — is the name of the top-level module of the test bench.
- <DUT\_path> — is the path from the test bench top to the design top instance.
- -pa — invokes simulation in Power Aware mode.
- [other vsim args] — any other vsim arguments used to control simulation.

# Standard Flow for Gate-Level Simulation

This section outlines general steps for using ModelSim to perform Power Aware gate-level simulation (PA-GLS). In addition, ModelSim supports the use of Liberty libraries for gate-level Power Aware analysis.

- [Gate-Level Simulation](#)
- [General Steps for Power Aware Gate-Level Simulation](#)
- [Liberty Library Models](#)

- [Delay Optimization Using Liberty Models](#)
- [Using a Liberty Database](#)

## Gate-Level Simulation

Power Aware Gate-Level Simulation (PA-GLS) provides verification of a gate-level functional netlist using a power specification file to represent the power intent (that is, the supply network and information regarding the power control signals and their connectivity).

Power Aware GLS performs the verification by properly connecting the supplies to the cells present in the netlist and simulating the supply network defined in your power specification file (usually a UPF file). This results in proper corruption semantics of the netlist and exposes the potential bugs that could be present in the design.

Typically, a gate-level netlist already contains partial power intent, while the remaining intent is present in the UPF file. Power Aware GLS currently targets the post- synthesis gate-level netlist (without timing characteristics).

The objective is to quickly verify the Power Aware functionality after synthesis, with the intention of catching functional defects that could not be detected at RTL.

In addition to the power intent information in your UPF file and the netlist, ModelSim also utilizes accompanying Liberty models of the instantiated cells when performing the Power Aware simulation. For more information on Liberty models, refer to [Liberty Library Models](#).

## UPF in Gate-Level Simulation

To represent the power intent for GLS, ModelSim supports the use of a gate-level functional netlist using a UPF file. Typically, a gate-level netlist already contains partial power intent, while the remaining intent is present in the UPF file.

## General Steps for Power Aware Gate-Level Simulation

The command flows for Power Aware GLS are two variations on the [Delay Optimization](#) flow for Power Aware RTL Simulation. However, to enable gate-level simulation you need to specify the `-pa_gls` argument for both the `vopt` and `vsim` commands. Additionally, any Liberty library model information that you want to include is passed to Power Aware processing using Liberty-specific options (see “[Liberty Library Models](#),” below).

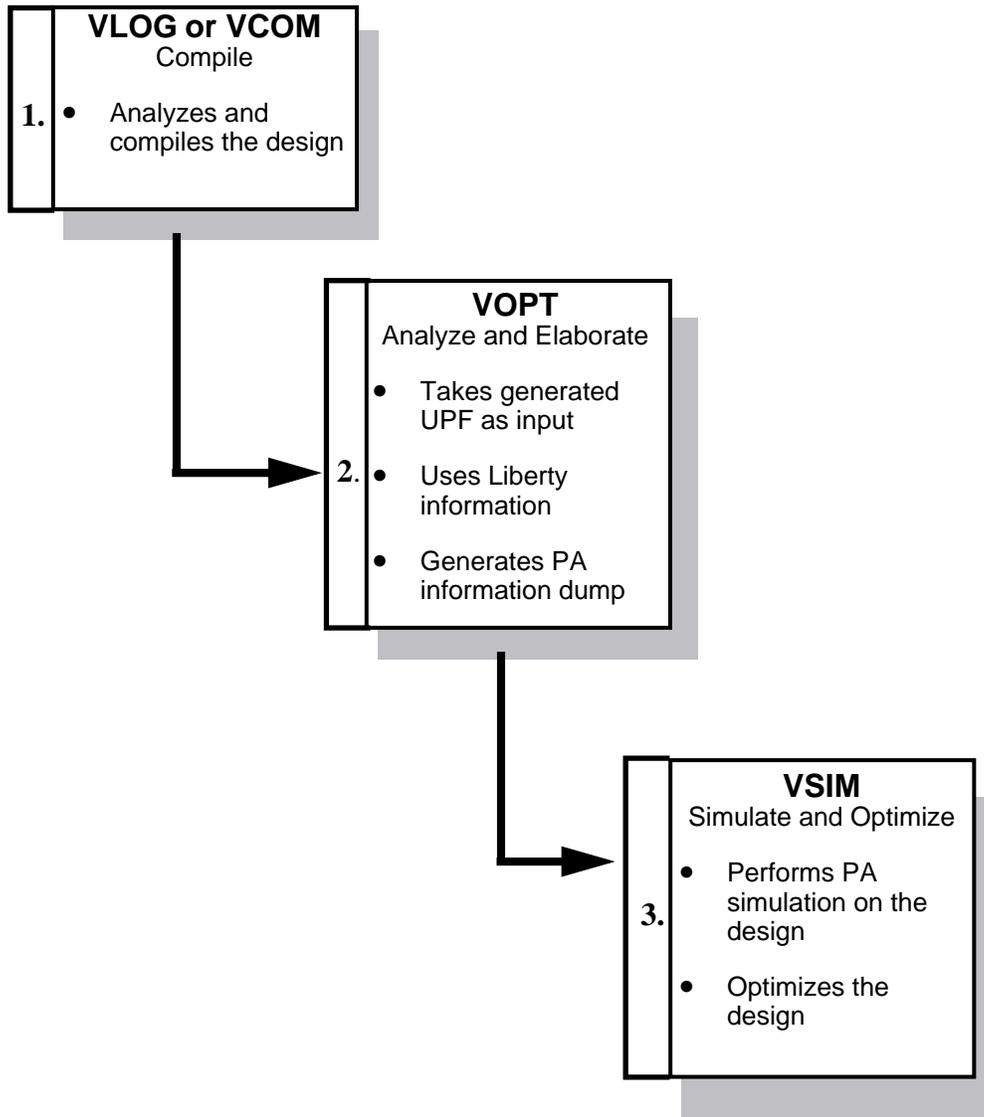
This section describes the standard command flow used to perform Power Aware simulation for gate-level designs. This flow consists of the following sequence of operations:

1. [Compile](#)
2. [Optimize](#)

### 3. Simulate

Figure 3-1 shows a more graphical representation of these steps.

**Figure 3-1. Basic Usage Model for PA-GLS**



## Liberty Library Models

The Liberty library modeling standard is a library delivery system specially architected for current-source models. The open source Liberty library modeling format is widely supported as

a standard throughout the semiconductor industry. Liberty is supported by numerous semiconductor vendors, EDA vendors, and production EDA tools.

The Open Source Liberty web site is a comprehensive online resource for the Liberty library modeling standard:

<http://www.opensourceliberty.org/>

This site also provides the latest news and information regarding Liberty and the Liberty Technical Advisory Board (LTAB).

Power Aware GLS uses the information present in the Liberty library to create proper connection of the supplies and the control signals that are defined in the UPF file. Liberty uses attributes to define this connectivity.

## Delay Optimization

The standard command flow for PA-GLS is the delayed optimization, which is similar to that for RTL. This flow is based on the [two-step optimization flow](#) of conventional simulation—you do not use the `-o` argument for `vopt`, so that optimization is not performed until you invoke the `vsim` command, at which point it is done implicitly.

## Compile

Compile the netlist, cells, and testbench by running either the `vcom` (for VHDL) or the `vlog` (for Verilog) command as you would for any VHDL or Verilog/SystemVerilog design.

### Example

```
vlog -f compile_gls.f
```

---

#### Note



Do not use the `-novopt` argument with either `vcom` or `vlog` when you compile for Power Aware simulation.

---

For more information on using `vcom`, refer to “[Compiling a VHDL Design—the vcom Command](#)” in the User’s Manual.

For more information on using `vlog`, refer to “[Invoking the Verilog Compiler](#)” in the User’s Manual.

## Optimize

After you compile the design, use the `vopt` command with the following arguments (without the `-o` argument, Questa SIM reads and processes the UPF file without generating an optimized output.):

-pa_gls	Instucts ModelSim to perform gate-level optimization on the design.
-pa_upf	Specifies the name of the UPF file, which contains a gate-level netlist with partial power intent. The remaining intent is provided as UPF commands, as with RTL.
-pa_lib	Specifies a destination library for dumping the Power Aware information. Note that you must use the vlib command to create the library, then use the library name as the value for this argument (pa_lib_name).

### Usage

```
vopt -pa_gls -pa_upf netlist.upf <netlist top> -pa_lib <pa_lib_name>
```

### Simulate

To implement simulation for this flow, run the vsim command on the test bench using the -pa and -novopt arguments to invoke Power Aware simulation with no optimization on the design.

-pa_gls	Instucts ModelSim to perform gate-level simulation on the design.
-L	Instucts ModelSim to use a library of precompiled Power Aware behavioral models (specify mtiPA, which is the default library defined in your modelsim.ini file).
-pa_lib	Instructs ModelSim to load Power Aware information from library (pa_lib_name).

### Usage

```
vsim -L mtiPA -pa_gls <testbench top> -pa_lib <pa_library_dump>
```

## Delay Optimization Using Liberty Models

Once you have the Liberty model files that characterize the cells used in your gate-level netlist, the basic command sequence for using them in a Power Aware simulation is shown below.

This sequence is similar to the Power Aware GLS described in [Delay Optimization](#). However, this flow, you use the vopt command two separate times to do the following:

1. Parse the Liberty files and create a database with Power Aware cell information
2. Configure the simulation

This flow is generally better when you are working with a design and a set of Liberty files that are very large.

## Compile

Use the vlog command to compile the netlist, cells, and testbench.

### Example

```
vlog -f compile_gls.f
```

## Optimize

1. Use the vopt command to parse the Liberty files and create a database with Power Aware cell information. Note that you can specify multiple files with the `-pa_libertyfiles` argument by separating file names with a comma.

### Example 1

```
vopt -pa_libertyfiles=a.lib,b.lib \  
-pa_dumplibertydb=lib_db
```

2. Use the vopt command again with other Power Aware arguments to configure the gate-level simulation.

### Example 2

```
vopt -pa_gls \  
-pa_prefix "/interleaver_tester/" \  
-pa_replacetop "dut" \  
-pa_excludefile exclude_gls.dat \  
-pa_loadlibertydb=lib_db \  
-pa_upf compile.upf \  
-pa_lib work \  
+nowarnTFMPC \  
design_top
```

where

<code>-pa_gls</code>	determines a gate-level simulation
<code>"interleaver tester"</code>	testbench name
<code>"dut"</code>	design instance name
<code>lib_db</code>	loads the information in the Liberty database
<code>compile.upf</code>	post-synthesis UPF file

## Simulate

Use the vsim command to run the Power Aware gate-level simulation (PA-GLS). ModelSim then compiles the model information into an internal database that is used by Power Aware processing. At the end of processing, ModelSim deletes this database by default.

## Example

```
vsim interleaver_tester \  
-pa_gls \  
-pa_lib work \  
-L mtiPA
```

## Using a Liberty Database

You can specify one or more Liberty files to use with the `vopt` command with the `-libertyfiles` argument. By default, using Liberty files creates an internal database, where library data is dumped. You can customize how to use this database with the following `vopt` arguments:

- `-pa_dumplibertydb`
- `-pa_libertyupdate`
- `-pa_libertyrefresh`
- `-pa_loadlibertydb`

In the following examples, consider two liberty files, `a.lib` and `b.lib`, each with its own library (A and B, respectively).

### Example 3-1. Use the Default Database to Create a Liberty Dump

The following command

```
vopt -libertyfiles=a.lib,b.lib
```

analyzes `a.lib` and `b.lib` files and creates the dumps for A and B in an internal database. These dumps are used for Liberty data in a Power Aware analysis; the internal database is deleted at the end of `vopt` run.

### Example 3-2. Reuse a User-Defined Database to Create a Liberty Dump

The following command

```
vopt -libertyfiles=a.lib,b.lib -pa_dumplibertydb=/home/user/libdumps/LVT
```

analyzes `a.lib` and `b.lib` files and creates the dumps for A and B are created in `/home/user/libdumps/LVT`, which is used in the Power Aware analysis. You can then reuse the LVT database in a future `vopt` run by specifying the `-pa_loadlibertydb` argument.

### Example 3-3. Replace an Existing Database to Create a Liberty Dump

If the cache directory already contains a dump for a Liberty library, you can replace the existing dump with a new one using `-pa_libertyupdate` argument. First, run the following:

```
vopt -libertyfiles=a.lib,b.lib -pa_dumplibertydb=/home/user/libdumps/LVT
```

This analyzes the `a.lib` and `b.lib` files as before, but `/home/user/libdumps/LVT` already contains the dumps for A and B, so the old dumps are used in the Power Aware flow.

When you run the following:

```
vopt -libertyfiles=a.lib,b.lib -pa_dumplibertydb=/home/user/libdumps/LVT  
-pa_libertyupdate
```

the `a.lib` and `b.lib` files are analyzed and dumped in `/home/user/libdumps/LVT` as before, and `LVT` already contains the dumps for A and B. But now, because of the `-pa_libertyupdate` argument, the old dumps are replaced with the new dumps, which are used in the Power Aware analysis.

## Usage Notes on Creating a Liberty Dump

- To refresh old library dumps in the cache directory created with `-pa_loadlibertydb` or `-pa_dumplibertydb`, use the `-pa_libertyrefresh` argument.
- You can use dumps created with one `vopt` run in subsequent `vopt` runs.
- You can enable debugging of designs containing Liberty cells ([Debugging Designs Containing Liberty Cells](#), below).

## Loading Liberty Dumps

When you run `vopt`, ModelSim loads the current liberty dump from the internal database or from the directory that you specify with the `-pa_dumplibertydb` argument.

You can also load additional liberty dumps created in a previous `vopt` run using `-pa_loadlibertydb` argument, as follows:

```
vopt -pa_loadlibertydb=/home/user/libdumps/LVT
```

## Debugging Designs Containing Liberty Cells

To enable debugging of designs containing Liberty cells, you need to specify the location of the Liberty library file using the `-debugdb` argument as part of the `vopt` command. For example:

```
vopt -libertyfiles=a.lib,b.lib -debugdb
```

This enables schematic viewing and causality analysis using Liberty logic cell definitions.

---

**Note**

You can also enable debugging and schematic viewing by setting the `MTI_LIBERTY_PATH` environment variable to the directory location containing Liberty library files.

---

## Automatic Detection of Power Management Cells

Gate-level netlists may have some of the Power Management cells (isolation, level-shifter, or retention) corresponding to the UPF strategy already instantiated in the netlist. Some of these cells may already be specified as a value for the `-instance` argument of the `set_isolation`, `set_level_shifter`, or `set_retention` commands of the UPF strategy in UPF file.

For the rest of the cells that are not specified in the UPF file, ModelSim automatically detects the right UPF strategy to which they belong and treats them in a similar way to cells of that strategy specified with an `-instance` argument.

By default, ModelSim implements automatic detection of Power Management cells when you run `vopt -pa_gls`.

Auto detection of Power Management cells leverages the following information for:

- Liberty attributes
  - `is_isolation_cell`
  - `is_level_shifter`
  - `retention_cell`
- `lib_cells` specified with the following UPF commands:
  - `map_isolation_cell`
  - `map_level_shifter cell`
- Arguments for the UPF `name_format` command
  - `-level_shift_prefix`
  - `-level_shift_suffix`
  - `-isolation_prefix`
  - `-isolation_suffix`
- Synopsys pragmas

- o isolation\_upf
- o retention\_upf

## Reports

The cells detected as an instance of some strategy are reported in report.upf.txt. For example:

```
Power Domain: A, File: ./src/case1/test.upf(11).
  Creation Scope: /tb/dut
  ...
  Isolation Strategy: ISO1, File: ./src/case1/test.upf(22).
    Isolation Supplies:
      power : /tb/dut/VDD_0d99
      ground : /tb/dut/VSS_0d99
    Isolation Control (/tb/dut/restore), Isolation Sense (HIGH), Clamp
Value (0), Location (fanout)
    Signals with -instance isolation cells:
      1. Signal : /tb/dut/instA/out, isolation cell :
/tb/dut/iso_1_UPF_ISO
```

## Messages

When ModelSim is unable to detect the UPF strategy of an isolation/level shifter cell, Power Aware simulation semantics are disabled and the cell is treated as always ON. The following message is displayed:

```
** Warning: (vopt-9768) Power aware simulation semantics disabled for
'/tb/dut/instA/ls_0_UPF_LS' as its power aware strategy could not be
identified.
```

For a cell identified as retention cell, ModelSim flags a warning if the cell is also identified as level-shifter or isolation cell. ModelSim then processes it as either a retention or an isolation/level-shifter cell, and the following message is displayed:

```
** Warning: UPF: (vopt-9823) Power aware cell '/tb/dut/iso_1' identified
as both 'isolation' cell and 'retention' cell. Assuming it to be a
'isolation' cell
```

# Chapter 4

## Power Aware Reports

---

You can use the `vopt` command to generate reports for a Power Aware simulation run, and then examine them to validate the application of the power intent on your design. Power Aware reports are generated by the `vopt` command using the `-pa_genrpt` argument.

Running `vopt -pa_genrpt` generates a Power Aware report containing the following:

- The intent of the low-power defined in the power specification file.
- For UPF, either static or dynamic information on the current Power Aware simulation (including connections to supply and ground nets). See [UPF Reports](#).
- For PCF, a count of the power aware elements in the design with respect to the power domains. See [PCF Reports](#).
- Any additions you may need to make to the specification file to achieve correct Power Aware functionality. For example, certain sections of the design that are non-synthesizable (such as a test bench) should not be inside a power domain. The report may suggest that you put this section of the design inside an always-on power domain.
- Behavioral constructs that must be in an always-on power domain.

## Generating Reports for Power Aware

You can use different values with the `-pa_genrpt` argument of `vopt` to generate a variety of Power Aware reports:

- [Table 4-1](#) lists the values for `-pa_genrpt` and their corresponding reports for UPF.
- [Table 4-2](#) lists the values for `-pa_genrpt` and their corresponding reports for PCF.

## How to Generate a Report with `vopt -pa_genrpt`

### Syntax

```
vopt -pa_genrpt=[[nv | v]][+{ud | us | u}][+b] [+pa] [+de]]
```

### Description

- The `-pa_genrpt` argument generates report files listed in [Table 4-1](#) and [Table 4-2](#).
- If you do not specify a value for the `-pa_genrpt` argument, all reports are generated.

- The default location for Power Aware reports is the current working directory. To change the location where report files are saved, use the following command:

```
vopt -pa_reportdir <pathname>
```

- Specify one value for `-pa_genrpt` from one or more of the following sets:
  - `nv, v`
  - `ud, us, u`
  - `b`
  - `pa`
  - `de`
- To specify more than one reporting value for `-pa_genrpt`, use the `+` operator between values. For example:

```
vopt -pa_genrpt=nv+us+de
```



For additional reference information on the `-pa_genrpt` argument, refer to the [vopt](#) command in the ModelSim Reference Manual.

---

## UPF Reports

If you are using a UPF file for your Power Aware analysis, you can obtain the following reports by specifying values for `vopt -pa_genrpt` described in [Table 4-1](#):

- [UPF Power Intent Report](#) (report.mpsa.txt)
- [UPF Static Report](#) (report.upf.txt)
- [Static Checking UPF Reports](#) (report.static.txt, report.nretsyncff.txt)
- [Dynamic UPF Report](#) (displayed in transcript window)
- [Architecture Report](#) (report.pa.txt)
- [Design Elements Report](#) (report.de.txt)

**Table 4-1. Generating UPF Reports for Power Aware**

<b>Report Type</b>	<b>Command Syntax</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Report Output</b>
Power Intent: Non-verbose (default)	vopt -pa_genrpt=nv	Displays a count of the Power Aware elements in the design with respect to power domains, along with additional information on power intent. This is the default if you do not specify nv or v.	report.mpsa.txt
Power Intent: Verbose	vopt -pa_genrpt=v	Displays the hierarchical path of individual Power Aware elements.	report.mpsa.txt
Dynamic	vopt -pa_genrpt=ud	Includes time and polarity of controls (such as control port of a power switch, retention save and restore signals, isolation enable signal), plus Power Domain Status in the form of <Power Domain name>, <Strategy name>, <Control signal names>, <Active Sense>, <Current polarity value>.	Transcript window (no file)
Static	vopt -pa_genrpt=us	Static reporting. Includes power domains and their supplies, power switches, retention, isolation, level-shifting strategies, and power state tables.	report.upf.txt report.static.txt
Dynamic and Static	vopt -pa_genrpt=u	Combined dynamic and static reporting.	Transcript window (dynamic) report.upf.txt (static)
Bitwise expanded port data	vopt -pa_genrpt=b	Writes bitwise expanded information for isolated and level shifted ports.	report.upf.txt

**Table 4-1. Generating UPF Reports for Power Aware (cont.)**

Report Type	Command Syntax	Description	Report Output
Architecture	vopt -pa_genrpt=pa	Lists all information related to Power Aware architecture in the design.	report.pa.txt
Design Elements	vopt -pa_genrpt=de	Contains information on power design elements in the design.	report.de.txt
Isolation Cell Information	vopt - pa_genrpt=u+c	Dumps hierarichal path of isolation cells placed for a candidate port.	report.upf.txt

## UPF Power Intent Report

Report Output: report.mspa.txt

Command: vopt -pa\_genrpt=nv | v

This report file contains the information related to the power intent that has been applied on the user design. File contents are structured according to power domains and provide hierarchical path names of the signals and instances that are affected by the power intent. This report also contains the count of retention and non-retention cells. The report.mspa.txt file does not report on objects/hierarchy/instances that are excluded from Power Aware.

The structure of this report file is described below.

- First entry in the report file is the keyword `Total` followed by the top design module specified in parentheses. Example:

```
Total ( /tb/top )
```

- The next entry is the consolidated count of all the types of cells in the design, in the format `CELL_TYPE # Count`, where `CELL_TYPE` could be any of the following:
  - `NPM_FF`: These represent non-power management flip-flops or corrupt flip-flops, which do not have retention associated with them. During simulation, they get corrupted only when power domain is switched off. Example:

```
NPM_FF # 1
```

- **NPM\_LA:** These represent non-power management latches or corrupt latches, which do not have retention behavior associated with them. During simulation, they get corrupted only when power domain is switched off. Example:

```
NPM_LA # 3
```

- **OUTPUT:** These represent combinatorial logic that belong to the power domain. During simulation, they get corrupted only when power domain is switched off. Example:

```
OUTPUT # 3
```

- **USER\_DEFINED:** For any user-defined retention models, the names of the model will be printed. Example:

```
upf_retention_ret # 2
```

### Example excerpt

```
Total ( tb )  
upf_retention_ret # 2  
NPM_FF # 1  
NPM_LA # 3  
OUTPUT # 3
```

- After the consolidated counts, all the power domains are then listed in the following format `<PD_NAME> sub_total ( <Instance hierarchical paths> separated by space)`. The instance hierarchical paths are the paths of those instances that contain objects that are affected by the current power domain. Example:

```
pd sub_total ( /tb/top_vh /tb/top_vl )
```

- Listed next are the individual **CELL\_TYPES** for that power domain. The hierarchical paths of objects belonging to those **CELL\_TYPES** are then listed below the keyword **CELL\_TYPE # Count** followed by the individual count.

---

#### Note



The difference between verbose ( `-pa_genrpt=v` ) and non-verbose mode ( `-pa_genrpt=nv` ) is the reference to hierarchical paths of the objects. This difference is shown in the following report excerpts.

---

### Example excerpt—verbose mode

```
pd sub_total ( /tb/top_vh /tb/top_vl )
```

```
upf_retention_ret # 2
  /tb/top_vh/q_regvh 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_regvl 1

NPM_LA # 2
  /tb/top_vh/q_latvh 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_latvl 1

OUTPUT # 2
  /tb/top_vh/q_combvh 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_combvl 1
```

### Example excerpt—non-verbose mode

```
pd sub_total ( /tb/top_vh /tb/top_vl )

upf_retention_ret # 2

NPM_LA # 2

OUTPUT # 2
```

### Example of UPF File and Power Intent Report

[Example 4-1](#) shows an excerpt from a UPF specification file that defines power domains, supply ports, switching behavior, retention strategy, and isolation strategy.

[Example 4-2](#) shows an excerpt of a power intent report.

#### Example 4-1. UPF File Excerpt

```
upf_version 1.0

set_scope tb
create_power_domain pd_aon -include_scope
create_supply_port vdd_port -domain pd_aon
create_supply_port gnd_port -domain pd_aon
create_supply_net vdd_net -domain pd_aon
create_supply_net gnd_net -domain pd_aon
connect_supply_net vdd_net -ports { vdd_port }
connect_supply_net gnd_net -ports { gnd_port }
set_domain_supply_net pd_aon -primary_power_net vdd_net -
primary_ground_net gnd_net

#####
#pd Power Domain
#####
create_power_domain pd -elements { top_vl top_vh }
create_supply_port V_pd_port -domain pd
create_supply_port G_pd_port -domain pd
create_supply_net V_pd_net -domain pd
create_supply_net G_pd_net -domain pd
create_supply_net pd_pwr -domain pd
#####
```

```

## connect supply ports to supply nets
#####
connect_supply_net    V_pd_net -ports { V_pd_port }
connect_supply_net    G_pd_net -ports { G_pd_port }
set_domain_supply_net pd      -primary_power_net pd_pwr -
primary_ground_net G_pd_net
#####
# Header switch for pd
#####
create_power_switch pd_sw \
    -domain pd \
    -output_supply_port { out_sw_pd pd_pwr } \
    -input_supply_port { in_sw_pd V_pd_net } \
    -control_port { ctrl_sw_pd pwr } \
    -on_state { normal_working in_sw_pd { ctrl_sw_pd } } \
    -off_state { off_state {!ctrl_sw_pd} }
#####
# Retention Strategy for pd
#####
set_retention          pd_retention -domain pd -retention_power_net
V_pd_net
set_retention_control pd_retention -domain pd -save_signal { ret posedge }
-restore_signal { ret negedge }
map_retention_cell     pd_retention -domain pd -lib_model_name
upf_retention_ret -lib_cell_type FF_CKHI

#####
# isolation Strategy for pd
#####
set_isolation          pd_isolation -domain pd -isolation_power_net
V_pd_net -clamp_value 1 -applies_to outputs
set_isolation_control pd_isolation -domain pd -isolation_signal iso
-isolation_sense high -location parent

```

## Example 4-2. UPF Power Intent Report

```

-----
----- QuestaSim Power Aware Report File -----
-----
Total ( tb )

upf_retention_ret # 2

NPM_FF # 1

NPM_LA # 3

OUTPUT # 3
-----

pd sub_total ( /tb/top_vh /tb/top_vl )

upf_retention_ret # 2
  /tb/top_vh/q_regvh 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_regvl 1

```

```
NPM_LA # 2
/tb/top_vh/q_latvh 1
/tb/top_vl/q_latvl 1

OUTPUT # 2
/tb/top_vh/q_combvh 1
/tb/top_vl/q_combvl 1
-----

pd_aon sub_total ( /tb/top_aon )

NPM_FF # 1
/tb/top_aon/q_regvl 1

NPM_LA # 1
/tb/top_aon/q_latvl 1

OUTPUT # 1
/tb/top_aon/q_combvl 1
-----

-- NPM_FF => Denotes all Non Power Management Flip Flops of a Power
Domain.
-- NPM_LA => Denotes all Non Power Management Latches of a Power Domain.
```

## UPF Static Report

Report Output: report.upf.txt

Command: vopt -pa\_genrpt=us | u [+b]

The UPF static report typically contains the information that was specified in the specification file and how ModelSim has processed that information. You can use this report to statically validate the power intent (specified by UPF) and check whether it is properly applied by ModelSim.

This report file contains information regarding the power domain, power supplies, power switches and their characteristics, retention, isolation and level shifter strategies and information regarding the power states and power state tables (PSTs).

Specifying a value of b writes bitwise expanded information for isolated and level shifted ports into this report file.

## Power Domain

The power domains are listed under the "Power Domain:" section of the report. This section contains the name of the power domain and the reference to the UPF file that contains the UPF command that created the power domain. All the other characteristics are listed in the following lines shifted by a tab space and starting with the property name (such as Creation Scope, Primary Supplies, Retention Strategy).

---

## UPF Command for Power Domain

```
create_power_domain pd -include_scope
```

## Report File Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

```
Power Domain: pd, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(7)
```

### Creation Scope

The creation scope of the power domain is listed in a subheading that defines the full hierarchical path of the scope.

```
Power Domain: pd, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(7).  
Creation Scope: /tb/top
```

### Primary Supplies

The primary supplies of the power domain are listed next under the subheading “Primary Supplies.”

```
Power Domain: pd, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(7).  
Creation Scope: /tb/top  
Primary Supplies:  
power : /tb/top/pd_pwr  
ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net
```

When a power domain is not connected to a primary supply, a warning message such as the following is displayed and that domain is treated as always-on:

```
** Warning: test.upf(7): (vopt-9665) Power domain: 'pd' created in scope  
'/top_v1' doesn't have a primary power/ground supply. Ignoring it.
```

### Supply Set Handles

The supply set handles associated with the power domain are listed under the subheading "Supply Set handles:" This provides the names of all handles and the absolute hierarchical path of the supply set associated with them.

```
Supply Set handles:  
1. primary: /tb/ss
```

The supply set functions are listed below the handle name under the heading "Functions:" and the individual functions and associated supply nets are listed in the following lines:

```
Supply Set handles:  
1. primary: /tb/ss  
   Functions:  
     1. power : /tb/vdd_sw  
     2. ground : /tb/gnd_net
```

### Note



If a handle is left unassociated with a supply set or supply net, the report will display <Anonymous> in the relevant field.

---

```
Supply Set handles:
  1. dummy_ss_handle: < Anonymous >
  2. primary: /tb/ss
    Functions:
      1. power : /tb/snet_pwr
      2. ground : < Anonymous >
```

### Reference Ground

The reference ground specified in the supply set is listed after the handle name followed by comma and "Ref Gnd:"

```
Supply Set handles:
  1. primary: /tb/my_second_ss, Ref Gnd: /tb/gnd_net
    Functions:
      1. power : /tb/vdd_net
```

## Power Switch

The power switches associated with the power domain are listed in the “Power Switch:” section of the report. This listing contains the name of the power switch and the reference to the UPF source file where that switch was created. All the output and input supply ports are listed in this section, followed by control ports and the switch states mentioned in the UPF file.

### UPF Command for Power Switch

```
create_power_switch pd_sw \
  -domain pd \
  -output_supply_port { out_sw_pd pd_pwr } \
  -input_supply_port { in_sw_pd1 V_pd_net1 } \
  -input_supply_port { in_sw_pd2 V_pd_net2 } \
  -control_port { ctrl_sw_pd1 pwr1 } \
  -control_port { ctrl_sw_pd2 pwr2 } \
  -on_state { normal_working1 in_sw_pd1 { (ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2) } } \
  -on_state { normal_working2 in_sw_pd2 { (ctrl_sw_pd2 && !ctrl_sw_pd1) } } \
  -off_state { off_state { (!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2) } }
```

## Report File Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

Port information appears in the format of:

```
<formal_port_name> (<externally_connected_net>
```

## Output Supply Port

The output supply port of the switch is listed under the "Output Supply port:" heading.

```
out_sw_pd(/tb/top/pd_pwr)
```

## Input Supply Port

The input supply ports are listed under Input Supply ports subheading.

```
1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
```

## Control Ports

```
1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
```

## Switch States

The specified states of the switch are listed under Switch States: heading. It lists each state in the following format: <state\_name> (<switch state>): <Boolean\_expression>

```
1. normal_working2(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd2 && !ctrl_sw_pd1) )
2. normal_working1(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2) )
3. off_state(OFF) : ((!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2))
```

## UPF Static Report Excerpt for Power Switch

```
Power Switch: pd_sw, File: test.upf(35).
  Output Supply port:
    out_sw_pd(/tb/top/pd_pwr)
  Input Supply ports:
    1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
    2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
  Control Ports:
    1. ctrl_sw_pd1(/tb/top/pwr1)
    2. ctrl_sw_pd2(/tb/top/pwr2)
  Switch States:
    1. normal_working2(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd2 && !ctrl_sw_pd1) )
    2. normal_working1(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2) )
    3. off_state(OFF) : ((!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2))
```

## Retention Strategy

Report information for the retention strategies is listed under the subheading: "Retention Strategy:" followed by the name of the strategy and the reference to the UPF source file where the strategy was created.

## UPF Commands for Retention

```
set_retention pd_retention -domain pd -retention_power_net V_pd_net

set_retention_control pd_retention -domain pd -save_signal { ret posedge }
-restore_signal { ret negedge }
```

## Report File Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

```
Retention Strategy: pd_retention, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(39)
```

### Supplies

The retention supplies are listed in the next line with the full hierarchical path of the supply nets.

```
Retention Supplies:  
power : /tb/top/V_pd_net  
ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net
```

### Control Signals and Sense

Retention control signals and the retention sense are listed as:

```
Retention SAVE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (posedge)  
Retention RESTORE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (negedge)
```

## UPF Static Report Excerpt for Retention

```
Retention Strategy: pd_retention, File: test.upf(39).  
Retention Supplies:  
    power : /tb/top/V_pd_net  
    ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net  
Retention SAVE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (posedge)  
Retention RESTORE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (negedge)
```

## Isolation Strategy

### UPF Commands for Isolation

```
set_isolation pd_isolation -domain pd -isolation_power_net V_pd_net  
-clamp_value 1 -applies_to outputs  
  
set_isolation_control pd_isolation -domain pd -isolation_signal iso  
-isolation_sense high -location parent
```

## Report File Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

Report information for the isolation strategy is listed under the subheading "Isolation Strategy:" followed by the name of the strategy and the reference to the UPF source file where the strategy was created.

```
Isolation Strategy: pd_isolation, File: test.upf(45).
```

### Supplies

The isolation supplies are listed in the following line with the full hierarchical path name of the supply nets as:

```
Isolation Supplies:  
power  : /tb/top/V_pd_net  
ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net
```

### Control, Sense, or Clamp

Other information related to the isolation strategy (such as Isolation control and its sense, the clamp value information and its location) are specified in the next line separated by comma in the following format:

```
<Property> (Value), ...
```

where Property can be any of the following:

Isolation Control — The control signal triggering the isolation clamp value.

Isolation Sense — The sense of the control signal at which the clamp value is applied on the isolated port.

Clamp Value — The clamp value specified.

Location — The location specified in the isolation strategy.

```
Isolation Control (/tb/top/iso), Isolation Sense (HIGH), Clamp Value (1),  
Location (parent)
```

### Ports

The list of candidate ports for isolation are listed in the next line with full hierarchical path names of the port.

```
Isolated Signals:  
1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1  
2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1  
3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1
```

### UPF Static Report Excerpt for Isolation

```
Isolation Strategy: pd_isolation, File: test.upf(45).  
  Isolation Supplies:  
    power  : /tb/top/V_pd_net  
    ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net  
  Isolation Control (/tb/top/iso), Isolation Sense (HIGH),  
Clamp Value (1), Location (parent)  
  Isolated Signals:  
    1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1  
    2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1  
    3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1
```

## Level Shifter Strategy

### UPF Command for Level Shifting

```
set_level_shifter pd_ls -domain pd -applies_to both
```

### Report File Sections and Subheadings

#### Definition

The information regarding the level shifter strategy is specified under the sub-heading, "Level Shifter Strategy:" followed by the strategy name and UPF file reference.

```
Level Shifter Strategy: pd_ls, File: test.upf(51).
```

#### Direction, Threshold, Filter, Location

Other information related to the level shifting strategy, such as shift direction, threshold, -applies\_to filter and location are listed in the following line in the format:

```
<Property> (Value), ...
```

where Property can be any of the following:

Rule — Shift Direction.

Threshold — Threshold value in volts.

Applies\_to — The value of the -applies\_to argument specified in the set\_level\_shifter command.

Location — The location specified with the set\_level\_shifter command.

```
Rule (both), Threshold (0), Applies_to (both), Location (automatic).
```

#### Ports

The list of candidate ports for level shifting are listed in the next line with full hierarchical path names of the port.

```
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:  
1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1  
2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1  
3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1  
4. Signal : /tb/top/set  
5. Signal : /tb/top/reset  
6. Signal : /tb/top/clock  
7. Signal : /tb/top/d
```

### UPF Static Report Excerpt for Level Shifting

```
Level Shifter Strategy: pd_ls, File: test.upf(51).  
Rule (both), Threshold (0), Applies_to (both), Location (automatic).  
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:
```

1. Signal : /tb/top/q\_combv1
2. Signal : /tb/top/q\_latv1
3. Signal : /tb/top/q\_regv1
4. Signal : /tb/top/set
5. Signal : /tb/top/reset
6. Signal : /tb/top/clck
7. Signal : /tb/top/d

## Power State Tables

### UPF Command for Power State Table

```
create_pst MyPowerStateTable -supplies {PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM}
```

### Report File Sections and Subheadings

#### Definition

Report information for a power state tables (PST) is listed under the subheading, "Pst:" followed by the name of the PST and the reference to the UPF source file where the PST was created according to the create\_pst command.

```
Pst: MyPowerStateTable, File:prototype.upf(80).
```

#### Scope

Hierarchical path of scope where the PST is created.

```
Scope /tb
```

#### Header

PST Header contains hierarchical paths of the supply nets/ports that form the columns of the PST. The hierarchical paths are relative to the Scope of PST.

```
Header: PD_ALU_primary_power PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM
```

The lines that follow contain the rows of the PST as mentioned in the UPF and the corresponding states of the supply nets/ports mentioned in the PST header. At the end, a list of all possible states present on the objects mentioned in the header is shown. This includes detailed information of the states listed with the voltage information.

For example:

```
Reboot prototype.upf(84)      : s_state      ram_s
Sleep prototype.upf(85)      : r_state      ram_s
Hibernate prototype.upf(86)   : r_state      ram_r
Complete_on prototype.upf(87) : o_state      ram_o
```

In the end, a list of all possible states present on the objects mentioned in the header is also reported. The detailed information of the states is listed with the voltage information as well.

This information is similar to what was specified in corresponding `add_port_state` UPF command. The source supply port mentioned in [ ] is the name of the supply port on which the `add_port_state` command is called or its the supply net/port which is directly connected to the port on which `add_port_state` command was called. The UPF file reference corresponds the file and line number of the `add_port_state` command.

List of possible states on:

```
PD_ALU_primary_power [ source supply port: PD_ALU_primary_power,
  File:prototype.upf(12) ]
  1. o_state: 4.20
  2. r_state: 3.20
  3. s_state: 2.20

out_sw_PD_RAM [ source supply port: out_sw_PD_RAM, File:prototype.upf(65) ]
  1. ram_s      : 3.80,4.20,4.80
  2. ram_r      : 5.20
  3. ram_o      : 6.20
  4. off_state: OFF
```

## UPF Command Excerpt

```
add_port_state PD_ALU_sw/out_sw_PD_ALU \
-state {s_state 2.2}\
-state {r_state 3.2}\
-state {o_state 4.2}\
-state {off_state off}

add_port_state PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM \
-state {ram_s 3.8 4.2 4.8 }\
-state {ram_r 5.2}\
-state {ram_o 6.2}\
-state {off_state off}

create_pst MyPowerStateTable -supplies {PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM}
add_pst_state Reboot -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {s_state ram_s}
add_pst_state Sleep -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {r_state ram_s}
add_pst_state Hibernate -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {r_state ram_r}
add_pst_state Complete_on -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {o_state ram_o}
```

## UPF Static Report Excerpt for PST

```
-----
Pst MyPowerStateTable, File:prototype.upf(80).
  Scope => /tb
  Header ==>                               : PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM
  Reboot      prototype.upf(84): s_state      ram_s
  Sleep       prototype.upf(85): r_state      ram_s
  Hibernate   prototype.upf(86): r_state      ram_r
  Complete_on prototype.upf(87): o_state      ram_o
```

```

List of possible states on:
  PD_ALU_primary_power [ source supply port: out_sw_PD_ALU,
File:prototype.upf(12) ]
    1. o_state: 4.20
    2. r_state: 3.20
    3. s_state: 2.20
  out_sw_PD_RAM [ source supply port: out_sw_PD_RAM,
File:prototype.upf(65) ]
    1. ram_s      : 3.80,4.20,4.80
    2. ram_r      : 5.20
    3. ram_o      : 6.20
    4. off_state: OFF

```

## Example of UPF Static Report File

### Example 4-3. Example File for Static UPF Reporting (report.upf.txt)

```

-----
----- Questa Power Aware UPF Report File -----
-----
Power Domain: pd, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(7).
  Creation Scope: /tb/top
  Primary Supplies:
    power   : /tb/top/pd_pwr
    ground  : /tb/top/G_pd_net
  Power Switch: pd_sw, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(35).
  Output Supply port:
    out_sw_pd(/tb/top/pd_pwr)
  Input Supply ports:
    1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
    2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
  Control Ports:
    1. ctrl_sw_pd1(/tb/top/pwr1)
    2. ctrl_sw_pd2(/tb/top/pwr2)
  Switch States:
    1. normal_working2(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd2 &&
!ctrl_sw_pd1) )
    2. normal_working1(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd1 &&
!ctrl_sw_pd2) )
    3. off_state(OFF) : ((!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2))

  Retention Strategy: pd_retention, File:
./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(39).
    Retention Supplies:
      power   : /tb/top/V_pd_net
      ground  : /tb/top/G_pd_net
    Retention SAVE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (posedge)
    Retention RESTORE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (negedge)

  Isolation Strategy: pd_isolation, File:
./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(45).
    Isolation Supplies:
      power   : /tb/top/V_pd_net
      ground  : /tb/top/G_pd_net

```

```
Isolation Control (/tb/top/iso), Isolation Sense (HIGH),
Clamp
Value (1), Location (parent)
Isolated Signals:
  1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1
  2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1
  3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1
Level Shifter Strategy: pd_ls, File:
./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(51).
Rule (both), Threshold (0), Applies_to (both), Location
(automatic).
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:
  1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1
  2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1
  3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1
  4. Signal : /tb/top/set
  5. Signal : /tb/top/reset
  6. Signal : /tb/top/clock
  7. Signal : /tb/top/d
  8. Signal : /tb/top/iso
  9. Signal : /tb/top/ret
  10. Signal : /tb/top/pwr2
  11. Signal : /tb/top/pwr1
```

## Static Checking UPF Reports

### Report Output: report.static.txt

### Command: vopt -pa\_checks=us

In Power Aware, you can perform a static check of the design using the power intent specified in the UPF file.

For Static checking, ModelSim verifies the design for the defined power intent without doing actual simulation. This static analysis uses the power intent definition report any missing power-related information or inconsistencies. Because a simulation run is not required, you only need to run vopt run to perform static checking. Results from static checking are written to the report.static.txt report file.

### Report Output: report.nretcyncff.txt

### Command: vopt -pa\_checks=npu

This report file is generated only when you specify vopt -pa\_checks=npu. It contains a list of hierarchical paths of those flip-flops in the design that do not have an asynchronous control signal, so they are affected by this check.

---

## Dynamic UPF Report

### Report Output: Transcript window

#### Command: `vopt -pa_genrpt=ud | u [+b]`

Specifying a value of `ud` or `u` displays dynamic UPF information to the Transcript window.

The dynamic report display includes time and polarity of controls (such as control port of a power switch, retention save and restore signals, isolation enable signal), plus Power Domain Status in the form of:

<Power Domain name>, <Strategy name>, <Control signal names>, <Active Sense>,  
<Current polarity value>

Specifying a value of `b` for this argument (`vopt -pa_genrpt=ud+b`) writes bitwise expanded information for isolated and level shifted ports into this report display.

#### Example of UPF Dynamic Report

```
# ** Note: (vsim-8916) MSPA_UPF_RET_CTRL_INFO: Time: 15 ns, Retention
Strategy (PD_BOT_retention), Retention SAVE (/tb/ret_bot_reg), Retention
Sense (posedge), switched to polarity (1).      Power Domain: PD_BOT

# ** Note: (vsim-8902) MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Time: 20 ns, Power domain
'PD_BOT' is powered down.

# ** Note: (vsim-8913) MSPA_UPF_SWITCH_CTRL_INFO: Time: 20 ns, Power
Switch (PD_BOT_sw), Control Signal (/tb/pg_bot), switched to polarity
(0), Power Switch state (OFF).      Power Domain: PD_BOT

# ** Note: (vsim-8902) MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Time: 35 ns, Power domain
'PD_BOT' is powered up.

# ** Note: (vsim-8913) MSPA_UPF_SWITCH_CTRL_INFO: Time: 35 ns, Power
Switch (PD_BOT_sw), Control Signal (/tb/pg_bot), switched to polarity
(1), Power Switch state (ON).      Power Domain: PD_BOT

# ** Note: (vsim-8916) MSPA_UPF_RET_CTRL_INFO: Time: 40 ns, Retention
Strategy (PD_BOT_retention), Retention RESTORE (/tb/ret_bot_reg),
Retention Sense (negedge), switched to polarity (0).      Power Domain:
PD_BOT

# ** Note: (vsim-8914) MSPA_UPF_ISO_CTRL_INFO: Time: 65 ns, Isolation
Strategy (PD_BOT_isolation), Isolation Control (/tb/iso_bot), Isolation
Sense (HIGH), switched to polarity (1).      Power Domain: PD_BOT
# ** Note: (vsim-8902) MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Time: 70 ns, Power domain
'PD_BOT' is powered down.

# ** Note: (vsim-8913) MSPA_UPF_SWITCH_CTRL_INFO: Time: 70 ns, Power
Switch (PD_BOT_sw), Control Signal (/tb/pg_bot), switched to polarity
(0), Power Switch state (OFF).      Power Domain: PD_BOT
# ** Note: (vsim-8902) MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Time: 85 ns, Power domain
'PD_BOT' is powered up.
```

```
# ** Note: (vsim-8913) MSPA_UPF_SWITCH_CTRL_INFO: Time: 85 ns, Power  
Switch (PD_BOT_sw), Control Signal (/tb/pg_bot), switched to polarity  
(1), Power Switch state (ON).      Power Domain: PD_BOT
```

```
# ** Note: (vsim-8914) MSPA_UPF_ISO_CTRL_INFO: Time: 90 ns, Isolation  
Strategy (PD_BOT_isolation), Isolation Control (/tb/iso_bot), Isolation  
Sense (HIGH), switched to polarity (0).      Power Domain: PD_BOT
```

## Architecture Report

Report Output: report.pa.txt

Command: vopt -pa\_genrpt=pa

This report contains information related to Power Aware architecture that results from the power intent defined in the UPF file, as applied to the design being simulated. The content and structure of this report is same as that of report.upf.txt and includes all objects that are either added or modified by applying power intent to the design.

This report file contains information regarding the following:

- [Power Domain](#) (including supplies)
- [Power Switch](#) (including supplies)
- [Retention Strategy](#) (including supplies)
- [Isolation Strategy](#)(including supplies)
- [Level Shifter Strategy](#)
- [Power State Tables \(PSTs\)](#)

## Power Domain

The power domains are listed under the Power Domain section of the report. This section contains the name of the power domain and a reference to the UPF file that contains the UPF command that created the power domain. All other characteristics are listed in the following lines shifted by a tab space and starting with the property name (such as Creation Scope, Primary Supplies, Retention Strategy).

## UPF Command

The information in the Power Domain section of the report results from the create\_power\_domain command defined in your UPF file. For example:

```
create_power_domain pd -include_scope
```

---

## Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

The Power Domain section identifies the power domain defined in the UPF file. For example:

```
Power Domain: pd, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(7)
```

### Creation Scope

The creation scope of the power domain is listed next in a subheading that defines the full hierarchical path of the scope. For example:

```
Creation Scope: /tb/top
```

### Primary Supplies

The primary supplies of the power domain are listed next in a subheading with hierarchical paths to the power and ground nets. For example:

```
Primary Supplies:  
  power : /tb/top/pd_pwr  
  ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net
```

When a power domain is not connected to a primary supply, a warning message is displayed and that domain is treated as always-on. For example:

```
** Warning: test.upf(7): (vopt-9665) Power domain: 'pd' created in scope  
'/top_v1' doesn't have a primary power/ground supply. Ignoring it.
```

### Supply Set Handles

The supply set handles associated with the power domain are listed under the subheading "Supply Set handles:" This provides the names of all handles and the absolute hierarchical path of the supply set associated with them. For example:

```
Supply Set handles:  
  1. primary: /tb/ss.
```

The supply set functions are listed below the handle name under the heading "Functions:" and the individual functions and associated supply nets are listed in the following lines:

```
Supply Set handles:  
  1. primary: /tb/ss  
    Functions:  
      1. power : /tb/vdd_sw  
      2. ground : /tb/gnd_net
```

### Note



If a handle is left unassociated with a supply set or supply net, the report will display <Anonymous> in the relevant field.

---

### Reference Ground

The reference ground specified in the supply set is listed after the handle name followed by a comma and Ref Gnd. For example:

```
Supply Set handles:
  1. primary: /tb/my_second_ss, Ref Gnd: /tb/gnd_net
    Functions:
      1. power : /tb/vdd_net
```

## Power Switch

The power switches associated with the power domain are listed in the Power Switch section of the report. This listing contains the name of the power switch and the reference to the UPF source file where that switch was created. All the output and input supply ports are listed in this section, followed by control ports and the switch states mentioned in the UPF file.

### UPF Command

The information in the Power Switch section of the report results from the `create_power_switch` command defined in your UPF file. For example:

```
create_power_switch pd_sw \
  -domain pd \
  -output_supply_port { out_sw_pd pd_pwr } \
  -input_supply_port { in_sw_pd1 V_pd_net1 } \
  -input_supply_port { in_sw_pd2 V_pd_net2 } \
  -control_port { ctrl_sw_pd1 pwr1 } \
  -control_port { ctrl_sw_pd2 pwr2 } \
  -on_state { normal_working1 in_sw_pd1 { (ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2)
    } } \
  -on_state { normal_working2 in_sw_pd2 { (ctrl_sw_pd2 && !ctrl_sw_pd1)
    } } \
  -off_state { off_state {(!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2)} }
```

## Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

The Power Switch section contains port information defined in the UPF file in the following format:

```
<formal_port_name> (<externally_connected_net>
```

## Output Supply Port

The output supply port of the switch is listed under the Output Supply port heading.

```
Output Supply port:
  out_sw_pd(/tb/top/pd_pwr)
```

## Input Supply Port

The input supply ports are listed under Input Supply ports subheading.

```
Input Supply ports:
  1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
  2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
```

## Control Ports

The control ports of the switch is listed under the Control Ports heading.

```
Control Ports:
  1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
  2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
```

## Switch States

The specified states of the switch are listed under Switch States: heading. It lists each state in the following format:

```
<state_name> (<switch state>): <Boolean_expression>
```

Example:

```
Switch States:
  1. normal_working2(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd2 && !ctrl_sw_pd1) )
  2. normal_working1(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2) )
  3. off_state(OFF) : ((!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2))
```

## Example: Power Architecture Report Excerpt for Power Switch

```
Power Switch: pd_sw, File: test.upf(35).
Output Supply port:
  out_sw_pd(/tb/top/pd_pwr)
Input Supply ports:
  1. in_sw_pd1(/tb/top/V_pd_net1)
  2. in_sw_pd2(/tb/top/V_pd_net2)
Control Ports:
  1. ctrl_sw_pd1(/tb/top/pwr1)
  2. ctrl_sw_pd2(/tb/top/pwr2)
Switch States:
  1. normal_working2(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd2 && !ctrl_sw_pd1) )
  2. normal_working1(ON) : ( (ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2) )
```

```
3. off_state(OFF) : ((!ctrl_sw_pd1 && !ctrl_sw_pd2))
```

## Retention Strategy

Report information for a retention strategy is listed under the Retention Strategy section of the report. This listing contains the name of the strategy and the reference to the UPF source file where the strategy was created.

## UPF Commands

The information in the Retention Strategy section of the report results from the `set_retention` and `set_retention_control` commands defined in your UPF file. For example:

```
set_retention pd_retention -domain pd -retention_power_net V_pd_net

set_retention_control pd_retention -domain pd -save_signal { ret posedge
} -restore_signal { ret negedge }
```

## Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

The Retention Strategy section identifies the retention specification in the UPF file. For example:

```
Retention Strategy: pd_retention, File: ./src/supply1_prefix/test.upf(39)
```

### Supplies

The retention supplies are listed next with the full hierarchical path of the power and ground supply nets. For example:

```
Retention Supplies:
  power : /tb/top/V_pd_net
  ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net
```

### Control Signals and Sense

Retention control signals and their corresponding retention sense values are listed together on the same line. For example:

```
Retention SAVE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (posedge)
Retention RESTORE (/tb/top/ret), Retention Sense (negedge)
```

## Signals with Retention Applied

Signals that have retention applied are listed under the subheading Retained Signals. For example:

```
Retained Signals:
  1. Scope: /tb/top_vh, File: reg_vh.vhdl(12)
     Model: Default UPF Retention
       1. /tb/top_vh/q_regvh
       2. /tb/top_vh/q_latvh
  2. Scope: /tb/top_vl, File: reg_vl.v(1)
     Model: Default UPF Retention
       1. /tb/top_vl/q_regvl
       2. /tb/top_vl/q_latvl
```

Note that the Model subheading identifies whether default retention is used or if a user-defined model is applied from a `map_retention_cell` command.

## Example: Power Architecture Report Excerpt for Retention

```
Retention Strategy: pd_retention, File: test.upf(41).
Retention Supplies:
  power : /tb/V_pd_net
  ground : /tb/G_pd_net
Retention SAVE (/tb/ret), Retention Sense (posedge)
Retention RESTORE (/tb/ret), Retention Sense (negedge)
Retained Signals:
  1. Scope: /tb/top_vh, File: reg_vh.vhdl(12)
     Model: Default UPF Retention
       1. /tb/top_vh/q_regvh
       2. /tb/top_vh/q_latvh
  2. Scope: /tb/top_vl, File: reg_vl.v(1)
     Model: Default UPF Retention
       1. /tb/top_vl/q_regvl
       2. /tb/top_vl/q_latvl
```

## Isolation Strategy

Report information for an isolation strategy is listed under the Isolation Strategy section of the report. This listing contains the name of the strategy and the reference to the UPF source file where the strategy was created.

## UPF Commands

The information in the Isolation Strategy section of the report results from the `set_isolation` and `set_isolation_control` commands defined in your UPF file. For example:

```
set_isolation pd_isolation -domain pd -isolation_power_net V_pd_net
clamp_value 1 -applies_to outputs

set_isolation_control pd_isolation -domain pd -isolation_signal iso
isolation_sense high -location parent
```

## Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

The Isolation Strategy section identifies the retention specification in the UPF file. For example:

```
Isolation Strategy: pd_isolation, File: test.upf(45).
```

### Supplies

The isolation supplies are listed next with the full hierarchical path of the power and ground supply nets. For example:

```
Isolation Supplies:  
power : /tb/top/V_pd_net  
ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net
```

### Control, Sense, Clamp

Retention control signals and their corresponding retention sense values are listed together on the same line.

Other information related to the isolation strategy (such as Isolation control and its sense, the clamp value information and its location) are specified in the next line separated by comma in the following format:

```
<Property> (Value), ...
```

where Property can be any of the following:

**Isolation Control** — The control signal triggering the isolation clamp value. Example:

```
Isolation Control (/tb/top/iso)
```

**Isolation Sense** — The sense of the control signal at which the clamp value is applied on the isolated port. Example:

```
Isolation Sense (HIGH)
```

**Clamp Value** — The clamp value specified. Example:

```
Clamp Value (1)
```

**Location** — The location specified in the isolation strategy. Example:

```
Location (parent)
```

## Ports

The list of candidate ports for isolation are listed next with full hierarchical path names of each port. For example:

```
Isolated Signals:
  1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1
  2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1
  3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1
```

## Example: Power Architecture Report Excerpt for Isolation

```
Isolation Strategy: pd_isolation, File: test.upf(45).
Isolation Supplies:
  power : /tb/top/V_pd_net
  ground : /tb/top/G_pd_net

Isolation Control (/tb/top/iso), Isolation Sense (HIGH), Clamp Value
(1), Location (parent)

Isolated Signals:
  1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1
  2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1
  3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1
```

## Level Shifter Strategy

Report information for level shifting strategy is listed under the Level Shifter Strategy section of the report. This listing contains the name of the strategy and the reference to the UPF source file where the strategy was created.

### UPF Command

The information in the Level Shifter Strategy section of the report results from the `set_level_shifter` command defined in your UPF file. For example:

```
set_level_shifter pd_ls -domain pd -applies_to both
```

## Sections and Subheadings

### Definition

The Level Shifter Strategy section identifies the retention specification in the UPF file, including the strategy name and UPF file reference.

```
Level Shifter Strategy: pd_ls, File: test.upf(51).
```

### Direction, Threshold, Filter, Location

Other information related to the level shifting strategy (such as shift direction, threshold, applies\_to filter and location) are specified in the next line separated by comma in the following format:

```
<Property> (Value), ...
```

where Property can be any of the following:

**Rule** — Shift direction. Example:

```
Rule (both)
```

**Threshold** — Threshold value in volts. Example:

```
Threshold (0)
```

**Applies\_to** — The value of the -applies\_to argument specified in the set\_level\_shifter command. Example:

```
applies_to (both)
```

**Location** — The location specified with the set\_level\_shifter command. Example:

```
Location (automatic)
```

### Ports

The list of candidate ports for level shifting are listed next with full hierarchical path names of each port.

```
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:  
1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1  
2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1  
3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1  
4. Signal : /tb/top/set  
5. Signal : /tb/top/reset  
6. Signal : /tb/top/clock  
7. Signal : /tb/top/d
```

### Example: Power Architecture Report Excerpt for Level Shifting

```
Level Shifter Strategy: pd_ls, File: test.upf(51).  
Rule (both), Threshold (0), Applies_to (both), Location (automatic).  
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:  
1. Signal : /tb/top/q_combv1  
2. Signal : /tb/top/q_latv1  
3. Signal : /tb/top/q_regv1  
4. Signal : /tb/top/set  
5. Signal : /tb/top/reset  
6. Signal : /tb/top/clock
```

```
7. Signal : /tb/top/
```

## Power State Tables (PSTs)

Report information for a power state tables (PST) is listed under the Pst section of the report, followed by the name of the PST and the reference to the UPF source file where the PST was created.

### UPF Command

The information in the Pst section of the report results from the create\_pst command defined in your UPF file. For example:

```
create_pst MyPowerStateTable -supplies {PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM}
```

### Sections and Subheadings

#### Definition

The Pst section identifies the power state table specification in the UPF file, including the strategy name and UPF file reference. For example:

```
Pst: MyPowerStateTable, File:prototype.upf(80).
```

#### Scope

Lists the hierarchical path of the scope where the PST is created. For example:

```
Scope /tb
```

#### Header

The PST Header contains hierarchical paths of the supply nets/ports that form the columns of the PST. The hierarchical paths are relative to the Scope of the PST. For example:

```
Header: PD_ALU_primary_power PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM
```

The lines that below this contain the rows of the PST as mentioned in the UPF and the corresponding states of the supply nets/ports mentioned in the PST header. At the end, a list of all possible states present on the objects mentioned in the header is shown. This includes detailed information of the states listed with the voltage information. For example:

```
Reboot prototype.upf(84)      : s_state  ram_s
Sleep prototype.upf(85)      : r_state  ram_s
Hibernate prototype.upf(86)   : r_state  ram_r
Complete_on prototype.upf(87) : o_state  ram_o
```

In the end, a list of all possible states present on the objects mentioned in the header is also reported. The detailed information of the states is listed with the voltage information as well—this information is similar to what was specified in corresponding `add_port_state` UPF command. The source supply port mentioned in [ ] is the name of the supply port on which the `add_port_state` command is called, or it is the supply net/port that is directly connected to the port on which `add_port_state` command was called. The UPF file reference corresponds the file and line number of the `add_port_state` command. For example:

```
List of possible states on:
  PD_ALU_primary_power [ source supply port: PD_ALU_primary_power,
  File:prototype.upf(12) ]
    1. o_state: 4.20
    2. r_state: 3.20
    3. s_state: 2.20

  out_sw_PD_RAM [ source supply port: out_sw_PD_RAM,
  File:prototype.upf(65) ]
    1. ram_s : 3.80,4.20,4.80
    2. ram_r : 5.20
    3. ram_o : 6.20
    4. off_state: OFF
```

### Example: Excerpt of UPF Commands for PST

```
add_port_state PD_ALU_sw/out_sw_PD_ALU \
-state {s_state 2.2}\
-state {r_state 3.2}\
-state {o_state 4.2}\
-state {off_state off}
add_port_state PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM \
-state {ram_s 3.8 4.2 4.8 }\
-state {ram_r 5.2}\
-state {ram_o 6.2}\
-state {off_state off}
create_pst MyPowerStateTable -supplies {PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM}
add_pst_state Reboot -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {s_state ram_s}
add_pst_state Sleep -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {r_state ram_s}
add_pst_state Hibernate -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {r_state ram_r}
add_pst_state Complete_on -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {o_state ram_o}
```

### Example: Power Architecture Report Excerpt for PST

```
Pst MyPowerStateTable, File:prototype.upf(80).
  Scope => /tb
  Header ==> : PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM
  Reboot prototype.upf(84): s_state ram_s
  Sleep prototype.upf(85): r_state ram_s
  Hibernate prototype.upf(86): r_state ram_r
  Complete_on prototype.upf(87): o_state ram_o
```

```
List of possible states on:
  PD_ALU_primary_power [ source supply port: out_sw_PD_ALU,
  File:prototype.upf(12)]
    1. o_state: 4.20
    2. r_state: 3.20
    3. s_state: 2.20

  out_sw_PD_RAM [ source supply port: out_sw_PD_RAM,
  File:prototype.upf(65)]
    1. ram_s : 3.80,4.20,4.80
    2. ram_r : 5.20
    3. ram_o : 6.20
    4. off_state: OFF
```

## Sample Power Architecture Report

```
-----
----- QuestaSim Power Aware Architecture Report File -----
-----
```

```
-- QuestaSim Version:      DEV-main 2294369 2011.01
-- Generated on           :      Tue Jan 25 09:37:28 2011
-----
```

```
-- This report file contains information about all
-- the Power Aware Architecture elements in the design.
-----
```

```
Power Domain: pd_aon, File: test.upf(4).
Creation Scope: /tb
Primary Supplies:
  power : /tb/vdd_net
  ground : /tb/gnd_net
-----
```

```
Power Domain: pd, File: test.upf(16).
Creation Scope: /tb
Primary Supplies:
  power : /tb/pd_pwr
  ground : /tb/G_pd_net
Power Switch: pd_sw, File: test.upf(37).
Output Supply port:
  out_sw_pd(/tb/pd_pwr)
Input Supply ports:
  1. in_sw_pd(/tb/V_pd_net)
Control Ports:
  1. ctrl_sw_pd(/tb/pwr)
Switch States:
  1. normal_working(ON) : ( ctrl_sw_pd )
  2. off_state(OFF) : (!ctrl_sw_pd)
Retention Strategy: pd_retention, File: test.upf(41).
Retention Supplies:
  power : /tb/V_pd_net
  ground : /tb/G_pd_net
Retention SAVE (/tb/ret), Retention Sense (posedge)
```

```
Retention RESTORE (/tb/ret), Retention Sense (negedge)
Retained Signals:
  1. Scope: /tb/top_vh, File: reg_vh.vhdl(12)
     Model: upf_retention_ret
       1. /tb/top_vh/q_regvh
  2. Scope: /tb/top_vl, File: reg_vl.v(1)
     Model: upf_retention_ret
       1. /tb/top_vl/q_regvl

Isolation Strategy: pd_isolation, File: test.upf(48).
Isolation Supplies:
  power : /tb/V_pd_net
  ground : /tb/G_pd_net
Isolation Control (/tb/iso), Isolation Sense (HIGH), Clamp Value (1),
  Location (parent)
Isolated Signals:
  1. Signal : /tb/top_vh/q_combvh
  2. Signal : /tb/top_vh/q_latvh
  3. Signal : /tb/top_vh/q_regvh
  4. Signal : /tb/top_vl/q_combvl
  5. Signal : /tb/top_vl/q_latvl
  6. Signal : /tb/top_vl/q_regvl
```

## Design Elements Report

Report Output: report.de.txt

Command: vopt -pa\_genrpt=de

This report contains all the information related to elements present in user design and its corresponding Power Aware information. The contents of this report are similar to that provided in the report.mspa.txt file, but it is presented in a different format that makes it easier to extract information from the report. Report information is listed in single-line records that contain keywords indicating the specific Power Aware characteristics.

This report file contains information regarding the following:

- [Design Element Scopes and Power Domains](#)
- [Corrupted Signals](#)
- [State Elements](#)
- [Retention Signals](#)

## Design Element Scopes and Power Domains

This information indicates the extent of power domains, such that all scopes in the design belonging to a particular power domain are listed in this report.

### Format

The report format for listing domains, scopes, and elements is the following:

PD: {PathN} = scope E

where

PD — represents the name of the power domain.

{PathN} — shorthand notation to denote the hierarchical path of the scope in the rest of the report.

scope — a keyword that indicates that this line is a design element scope (to assist in using a grep search).

E — represents the full hierarchical path of the design element (its scope).

### Example: Excerpt of UPF Commands

```
set_scope tb
create_power_domain pd_aon -include_scope
create_power_domain pd -elements {top_vl top_vh}
```

### Example: Design Elements Report Excerpt for Scopes and Power Domains

```
pd_aon: {Path1} = scope /tb/top_aon
pd: {Path2} = scope /tb/top_vh <>
pd: {Path3} = scope /tb/top_vl <>
```

#### Note



The <> symbol after the Element path name identifies scopes in the design that are present at the power domain boundary.

## Corrupted Signals

The signals inside the power domain corrupted when the supply of the power domain is switched off are listed in the report with a hierarchical path to the name of the corrupted signal.

### Format

The report format for listing corrupted signals is the following:

PD: {PathN}/S

where

PD — represents the name of the power domain.

{PathN} — shorthand notation to denote the hierarchical path of the scope.

S — represents the name of the signal.

### Example: Design Elements Report Excerpt for Corrupted Signals

```
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_combv1  
pd: {Path2}/q_latvh NPM_LA  
pd: {Path3}/q_regv1 R
```

## State Elements

The signals in the design acting as state elements are listed in the same way as [Corrupted Signals](#), along with a special keyword that identifies the kind of state element.

### Format

The report format for listing corrupted signals is the following:

PD: {PathN}/S <KEYWORD>

where

PD — represents the name of the power domain.

{PathN} — shorthand notation to denote the hierarchical path of the scope.

S — represents the name of the signal.

KEYWORD — is one of the following values, indicating whether the signal is acting as a state element or a retention element:

NPM\_LA — Non-retention Latch

NPM\_FF — Non-retention Flip-Flop

MEM — Non-retention Memory

UDP\_LA — Non-retention UDP Latch

UDP\_FF — Non-retention UDP Flip-Flop

R — Retention element

<no keyword> — Combinatorial logic

## Example: Design Elements Report Excerpt for State Elements

```
pd: {Path3}/q_combv1  
pd: {Path3}/q_regv1 R  
pd: {Path3}/q_latv1 NPM_LA  
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_regv1 NPM_FF
```

## Retention Signals

The signals in the design performing retention behavior are marked with a special keyword R after the signal name.

The signals in the design performing retention behavior are listed in the same way as [Corrupted Signals](#), along with the keyword R after the signal name.

### Format

The report format for listing corrupted signals is the following:

```
PD: {PathN}/S R
```

where

PD — represents the name of the power domain.

{PathN} — shorthand notation to denote the hierarchical path of the scope.

S — represents the name of the signal.

R — indicates a retention signal.

## Example: Excerpt of UPF Commands

```
set_retention pd_retention -domain pd -retention_power_net V_pd_net  
  
set_retention_control pd_retention -domain pd -save_signal { ret posedge }  
-restore_signal { ret negedge}
```

## Example: Design Elements Report Excerpt for Retention Signals

```
pd: {Path3}/q_regv1 R  
pd: {Path2}/q_regvh R
```

## Working With A Design Element Report

### General Information

The name of the report and other information are presented as commented text at the top of the report. Comments are marked with double hyphens (--) at the beginning of a line. For example:

```
-----  
----- Questa Sim Power Aware Design Element Report File -----  
-----  
-- QuestaSim Version: DEV-10.0 2238002 2010.11  
-- Generated on : Mon Nov 22 13:44:03 2010  
-----
```

## Extracting Information from a Design Element Report

The structure and keywords of a Power Aware design element report allows you to extract the information related to power intent easily and effectively using any string matching utility, such as the Linux `grep` command.

The following examples show how to use the `grep` command to extract specific details of your power intent.

### List all instances in the design belonging to a power domain

Function: Search all scopes belonging to power domain `pd_aon`.

Command:

```
grep pd_aon report.de.txt | grep scope
```

Output:

```
pd_aon: {Path1} = scope /tb/top_aon
```

### List all retention signals in the design

Command:

```
grep " R" report.de.txt | grep -v "^--"
```

Output:

```
pd: {Path2}/q_regvh R  
pd: {Path3}/q_regvl R
```

### Expand the Path Id

Command:

```
grep "{Path2} =" report.de.txt
```

Output:

```
pd: {Path2} = scope /tb/top_vh <>
```

### Search a particular signal for power intent

Command 1:

```
grep "/tb/top_vh\>" report.de.txt
```

**Output 1:**

```
pd: {Path2} = scope /tb/top_vh <>
```

**Command 2:**

```
grep "{Path2}/q_regvh" report.de.txt
```

**Output 2:**

```
pd: {Path2}/q_regvh R
```

(implies that /tb/top\_vh/q\_regvh is a retention register inside power domain pd)

**Identify instances at power domain boundary****Command:**

```
grep "<>" report.de.txt
```

**Output:**

```
pd: {Path2} = scope /tb/top_vh <>  
pd: {Path3} = scope /tb/top_vl <>
```

**Sample Power Aware Design Element Report**

```
-----  
----- QuestaSim Power Aware Design Element Report File -----  
-----  
-- QuestaSim Version:      DEV-main 2294369 2011.01  
-- Generated on           :      Tue Jan 25 09:37:28 2011  
-----  
-- This report file contains PA information about all the elements in user  
-- design.  
-- The information is present in single line records of following format:  
-- PD : {PathN} = scope E <>  
-- PD : {PathN}/S < KEYWORD >  
-- where  
-- PD      => Power Domain Name  
-- {PathN} => Shorthand notation for the hierarchical path of scope  
-- scope   => keyword to indicate that this line is a design element  
--         scope, this defines {PathN} value  
-- E       => Full hierarchical path of Design Element (scope)  
-- <>      => indicates that this line corresponds to scope at power  
--         domain boundary.  
-- S       => Name of the signal  
-- <KEYWORD> => The keywords indicate whether its acting as a state-  
--         element or retention element, and can be following types:  
-- NPM_LA  => Non Retention Latch  
-- NPM_FF  => Non-retention Flip-Flop  
-- MEM     => Non-retention Memory  
-- UDP_LA  => Non-retention UDP latch  
-- UDP_FF  => Non-retention UDP Flip-Flop
```

```
--      R           => Indicates retention element
--      <No keyword> => Indicates a combinatorial logic
```

```
pd_aon: {Path1} = scope /tb
pd_aon: {Path2} = scope /tb/top_aon
pd: {Path3} = scope /tb/top_vh <>
pd: {Path4} = scope /tb/top_vl <>
```

```
pd_aon: {Path1}/tie_high_low
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_combaon
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_latchaon
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_regaon
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_combvh
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_latchvh
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_regvh
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_combvl
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_latchvl
pd_aon: {Path1}/q_regvl
pd_aon: {Path1}/ret
pd_aon: {Path1}/iso
pd_aon: {Path1}/pwr
pd_aon: {Path1}/set
pd_aon: {Path1}/rst
pd_aon: {Path1}/clk
pd_aon: {Path1}/d
pd_aon: {Path2}/q_combvl
pd_aon: {Path2}/q_regvl NPM_FF
pd_aon: {Path2}/q_latvl NPM_LA
pd: {Path3}/q_combvh
pd: {Path3}/q_regvh R
pd: {Path3}/q_latvh NPM_LA
pd: {Path4}/q_combvl
pd: {Path4}/q_regvl R
pd: {Path4}/q_latvl NPM_LA
```

## PCF Reports

If you are using a PCF file, you can obtain the following Power Aware reports by specifying `vopt -pa_genrpt=nv` or `vopt -pa_genrpt=v` (described in [Table 4-2](#)).

- [PCF Power Intent Report](#) (report.mpsa.txt)
- [PCF Always-On Report](#) (report.alwayson.txt)
- [PCF Corruption Report](#) (report.corruption.txt)
- [PCF Isolation Report](#) (report.isolation.txt)
- [PCF Static Checking Report](#) (report.nretsyncff.txt)

**Table 4-2. Generating PCF Reports for Power Aware**

Report Type	Command Syntax	Description	Report Outputs
Power Intent: Non-verbose (default)	vopt -pa_genrpt=nv	Additional information on power intent. This is the default if you do not specify nv or v.	report.alwayson.txt report.corruption.txt report.isolation.txt report.nretsyncff.txt report.mpsa.txt
Power Intent: Verbose	vopt -pa_genrpt=v	Displays the hierarchical path of individual power aware elements.	report.alwayson.txt report.corruption.txt report.isolation.txt report.nretsyncff.txt report.mpsa.txt

## PCF Power Intent Report

Report Output: `report.mpsa.txt`

Command: `vopt -pa_genrpt=nv | v`

This report file contains the information related to the power intent that has been applied on the user design. File contents are structured according to power domains and provide hierarchical path names of the signals and instances that are affected by the power intent. This report also contains the count of retention and non-retention cells.

Refer to [UPF Static Report](#) for more information on `report.mpsa.txt`.

## PCF Always-On Report

Report Output: `report.alwayson.txt`

Command: `vopt -pa_genrpt=nv | v`

Signals are in an always-on power domain. They should never get corrupted due to any power activity.

### PCF Command Excerpt

```
POWER pd_aon /tb, 1
POWER pd /tb/top_vl, /tb/top_vh, /tb/pwr
MAP upf_retention_ret FF_CKHI /tb/ret, /tb/top_vl, /tb/top_vh
```

### PCF Static Report Excerpt for Always-On

-----

```
----- QuestaSim Power Domain Report File(ALWAYS ON) -----  
-----  
pd_aon sub_total ( /tb/top_aon )  
  
NPM_FF # 1  
  /tb/top_aon/q_regv1 1  
  
NPM_LA # 1  
  /tb/top_aon/q_latv1 1  
  
OUTPUT # 1  
  /tb/top_aon/q_combv1 1  
-----
```

where

NPM\_FF — denotes all non-power-management flip-flops of a power domain  
NPM\_LA — denotes all non-power-management latches of a power domain  
OUTPUT — denotes outputs and power signals (that are not sequential elements)  
of a power domain

## PCF Corruption Report

Report Output: `report.corruption.txt`

Command: `vopt -pa_genrpt=nv | v`

This report is a subset of `report.mspa.txt` that contains only those power domain are NOT always on.

### PCF Command Excerpt

```
POWER pd_aon /tb, 1  
POWER pd /tb/top_v1, /tb/top_vh, /tb/pwr  
MAP upf_retention_ret FF_CKHI /tb/ret, /tb/top_v1, /tb/top_vh
```

### PCF Static Report Excerpt for Corruption

```
-----  
----- QuestaSim Power Domain Report File(CORRUPTION) -----  
-----  
pd sub_total ( /tb/top_vh /tb/top_v1 )  
  
upf_retention_ret # 2  
  /tb/top_vh/q_regvh 1  
  /tb/top_v1/q_regv1 1  
  
NPM_LA # 2  
  /tb/top_vh/q_latvh 1  
  /tb/top_v1/q_latv1 1
```

```
OUTPUT # 2
/tb/top_vh/q_combvh 1
/tb/top_vl/q_combvl 1
-----
```

```
-- NPM_FF => Denotes all Non Power Management Flip Flops of a Power
Domain.
-- NPM_LA => Denotes all Non Power Management Latches of a Power
Domain.
-- OUTPUT => Denotes all outputs and power signals, which are not
sequential elements, of a Power Domain.
```

where

NPM\_FF — denotes all non-power-management flip-flops of a power domain  
NPM\_LA — denotes all non-power-management latches of a power domain  
OUTPUT — denotes outputs and power signals (that are not sequential elements)  
of a power domain

## PCF Isolation Report

Report Output: `report.isolation.txt`

Command: `vopt -pa_genrpt=nv | v`

This report is a subset of `report.msapa.txt` that contains only those power domain are NOT always on.

### PCF Command Excerpt

```
ISO_id: iso_bot2 , extent: /tb/top , enable: (/tb/iso1) , reset:
!(/tb/iso1)

ports:
/tb/top/output2
/tb/top/in_sl
```

## PCF Static Checking Report

Report Output: `report.nretcyncff.txt`

Command: `vopt -pa_checks=npu`

This report file is generated only when you specify `vopt -pa_checks=npu` (common to both UPF and PCF). It contains the list of hierarchical paths of those flip-flops in the design that do not have an asynchronous control signal, so they are affected by this check.

## Behavioral Element Reporting

Use the `-pa_behavlogfile` argument to generate a report on behavioral constructs in the design that need to be in an always-on power domain.

### Usage

```
vopt -pa_behavlogfile=<filename>
```

### Description

This argument writes a listing of all the non-synthesizable constructs found in design to a text file, specified by `<filename>`. The purpose of this report is to identify all the constructs that have to be put in an always-on power domain.

The format for the constructs of this argument is the following:

I: hierarchical path of instance (for non-synthesizable instances)

P: hierarchical path of block process/always/initial (for non-synthesizable process/always/initial blocks)

S: hierarchical path of signals (for signals (writers) falling in non-synthesizable unnamed process/always/initial block)

The corresponding expected PCF updates from the user are:

```
POWER pd1 -i <hier path1>, 1  
POWER pd1 -p <hier path2>, 1  
POWER pd1 -s <hier path3>, 1
```

### Example Excerpt from a Behavioral Log File

```
S : /top/out  
P : /top/l1  
P : /top/l2  
S : /top/out  
I : /top/bot
```

# Chapter 5

## Automatic Checking

---

This chapter describes how to perform static and dynamic checking as part of Power Aware simulation. To implement either mode of checking, you use the `-pa_checks` argument of the `vopt` command. This argument takes on a variety of values, which are listed and described in the following sections:

- [Static Checking in Power Aware](#)
- [Dynamic Checking in Power Aware](#)
- [Implementing Checking at Gate Level](#)

### Static Checking in Power Aware

Use the `-pa_checks` argument of the `vopt` command to perform static checking to validate the behavior of power intent and specification in the designs. The values you specify for the `-pa_checks` argument activate static checking of signals for these power conditions:

- [Static Isolation Checks](#)
- [Static Level Shifter Checks](#)

The `-pa_checks` argument does the following:

- Displays a `vopt` summary related to all the checks performed and the result.
- Generates a detailed report file (named `report.static.txt`) containing the result of static checks. This file contains information dumped in two formats:
  - Domain-wise dumping — all the ports are identified and collect with respect to connectivity between power domains.
  - Level-shifter-strategy-wise dumping — the same information is now displayed with respect to individual level shifting strategy. It helps to correlate easily with the list of candidate ports dumped in the UPF report file, `report.upf.txt`.

For all static (isolation or level shifter) checks, ModelSim analyzes specified [Power State Tables](#) (PSTs) and power states added on power domains and supply sets in the UPF file. The purpose of this is to detect the power domain relative OFF/ON condition and relative operating voltages.

If state dependencies between two connected power domains are not present in PST/add\_power\_state, then ModelSim cannot determine power domain relative ON/OFF states statically. In this case, static isolation checking will report isolation strategies as “Not Analyzed.”

## Usage Notes for Static Checking

The -pa\_checks argument of the vopt command has numerous possible values that you can assign to enable either dynamic or static checking for Power Aware simulation.

- For a quick listing of all values for the -pa\_checks argument, refer to [Table A-1](#).
- For additional reference information on the -pa\_checks argument, refer to the [vopt](#) command in the ModelSim Reference Manual.
- For a listing of static and dynamic checks according to elements defined for a given power domain, refer to [Table B-1](#).
- To specify more than one checking value for -pa\_checks, use the + operator between values. For example:

```
vopt -pa_checks=sni+sdi
```

## Related Topics

[Voltage Level-Shifting \(Multi-Voltage Analysis\)](#)

[Modeling Isolation](#)

## Debugging Static Checks

You can perform debugging on static checking for isolation or level shifters by using the vopt -pa\_dbgstatic command. The available values for the -pa\_dbgstatic argument determine the debugging behavior performed, as described below.

Specified by: -pa\_dbgstatic=rsn

Function: ModelSim appends information at the end of a report following the phrase "Possible reason" to help pinpoint the cause of the check.

Report File dump (report.static.txt):

```
Inferred type: 'Not inserted' [ count: 1 ], Source port :  
/tb/TOP/bot4/bot5/out1_bot [ connected mask: "1" ] [ LowConn ] { Domain:  
pd_bot } -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot [ connected mask: "0001" ] [  
HighConn ] { Domain: pd_top }  
Possible reason: 'Level shifter is specified as -no_shift'
```

Specified by: `-pa_dbgstatic=msk`

**Function:** Captures the connection mask of the signal taken in a particular path. For example, if there is a vector taking different path, the phrase "connected mask" provides information about which bits are used in connecting the particular source and sink.

**Report File dump (report.static.txt):**

```
Inferred type: 'Incorrect' [ count: 0 ], Source port : /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot
[ connected mask: "0100" ] [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_aon } -> Sink port:
/tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot
[ connected mask: "0100" ] [ HighConn ] { Domain: pd_top }
```

## Static Isolation Checks

[Table 5-1](#) lists a summary of the various static isolation checks you can apply by specifying different values for the `vopt -pa_checks` command. All static isolation check results are written to the report file, `report.static.txt`.

**Table 5-1. Static Isolation Checks**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Static Missing	<code>vopt -pa_checks=smi</code>	For domain crossings where source domain is relatively OFF with respect to sink domain. For any isolation strategies not specified for such crossings, missing isolation cells will be reported.	** Warning: (vopt-9750) [ UPF_ISO_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Missing isolation cells.

**Table 5-1. Static Isolation Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Static Redundant	vopt -pa_checks=sri	If power domain crossings where isolation strategies are specified, but isolation is not required for power domain crossing, then these strategies will be reported as redundant. Redundant isolation cells will be reported when isolation is not required from driving power domain to sink power domain and isolation cell is placed for the power domain crossing.	** Warning: (vopt-9750) [ UPF_ISO_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 3 Redundant isolation cells.
Static Incorrect	vopt -pa_checks=sii	Incorrect isolation cells will be reported when isolation is required for power domain crossing but isolation strategy is specified with set_isolation -no_isolation.	** Warning: (vopt-9750) [ UPF_ISO_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 3 Incorrect isolation cells.
Static Valid	vopt -pa_checks=svi	Isolation is required for a power domain crossing and valid isolation strategies are specified for domain crossing.	** Note: (vopt-9750) [ UPF_ISO_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Valid isolation cells.
Static Not Analyzed	vopt -pa_checks=sni	For power domain crossing—if power state table (PST) information is not sufficient to analyze whether isolation is required or not for input and output power domains of an isolation strategy, then such isolation strategies will be flagged as Not analyzed.	** Warning: (vopt-9750) [ UPF_ISO_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Not analyzed isolation cells.

**Table 5-1. Static Isolation Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Static Not Inserted	vopt -pa_checks=sdi	Isolation strategies will be flagged as Not inserted when isolation is not required for a power domain crossing and isolation strategies specified with set_isolation -no_isolation.	** Warning: (vopt-9750) [ UPF_ISO_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Not inserted isolation cells.
All Static Isolation Checks	vopt -pa_checks=si	Perform all static isolation checks (smi, sri, sii, svi, sni, sdi)	

## Isolation Cell Instance Checking

If you have used the `set_isolation -instance` command in a UPF file to instantiate RTL isolation cells, ModelSim will detect those cells and perform the following isolation checks on them (instance checking results are written to report.static.txt):

- Incorrect Isolation Check

```
Total 1 Incorrect isolation cells.
  Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2
  [ Total count: 1 ]
    1. ISO( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot
  [ connected mask: "0001" ], count:1, Isolation cell :
  /tb/TOP/isoinst1_0(ISO_AND), Domain: PD_mid1,
    Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
  "0001" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot
  [ connected mask: "0001" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]
```

- Valid Isolation

```
PD_mid2 [ Total count: 1 ]
    1. ISO( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot
  [ connected mask: "0010" ], count:1, Isolation cell :
  /tb/TOP/isoinst1_1(ISO_AND), Domain: PD_mid1,
    Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
  "0010" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot
  [ connected mask: "0010" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]
```

- Redundant Isolation

```
Total 1 Redundant isolation cells.
  Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2
  [ Total count: 1 ]
```

```

1. ISO( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot
[ connected mask: "0100" ], count:1, Isolation cell :
/tb/TOP/isoinst2_0(ISO_AND), Domain: PD_mid2,
    Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
"0100" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "0100" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]

```

- **Not Analyzed Isolation**

```

Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2
[ Total count: 1 ]
1. ISO( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot
[ connected mask: "1000" ], count:1, Isolation cell :
/tb/TOP/isoinst2_1(ISO_AND), Domain: PD_mid2,
    Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
"1000" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot
[ connected mask: "1000" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]

```

## Static Level Shifter Checks

You can apply various static checking functions for level shifters by using the `vopt -pa_checks` command. The value you specify for the `-pa_checks` argument determines the checking function performed, as shown in [Table 5-2](#).

**Table 5-2. Static Level Shifter Checks**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message or Report
Missing Level Shifter	<code>vopt -pa_checks=sml</code>	Checks that if level shifter is required at domain crossing and level shifter strategy is not specified.	** Warning: (vopt-9693) [ UPF_LS_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Missing level shifters.
Incorrect Level Shifter	<code>vopt -pa_checks=sil</code>	Checks that if direction of level shifters specified for domain crossing does not match with direction as per voltage difference of domain crossing. For example: domain crossing requires low_to_high level shifter and level shifter specified is high_to_low, then it will be reported as incorrect.	** Warning: (vopt-9693) [ UPF_LS_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Incorrect level shifters.

**Table 5-2. Static Level Shifter Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message or Report
Redundant Level Shifter	vopt -pa_checks=srl	Checks for any level shifter whose source and sink power domains have no voltage difference. ModelSim flags this as a redundant level shifter.	** Warning: (vopt-9693) [ UPF_LS_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Redundant level shifters.
Unanalyzed Level Shifter	vopt -pa_checks=snl	Reports level shifter strategies that are not analyzed because of insufficient information, such as a power state table is not specified or is incomplete.	** Warning: (vopt-9693) [ UPF_LS_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 1 Not analyzed level shifters.
Valid Level Shifter	vopt -pa_checks=svl	Indicates the valid level shifters that have matching voltage information and proper direction of shift. (Also, see <a href="#">Reporting for a Valid Level Shifter.</a> )	** Note: (vopt-9693) [ UPF_LS_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 2 Valid level shifters
Uninserted Level Shifter	vopt -pa_checks=sdI	Reports level shifter strategies that are defined with the set_level_shifter -no_shift command in UPF file, but are not inserted.	Inferred type: 'Not inserted' [ count: 1 ], Source port : /tb/TOP/bot4/bot5/out1_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_bot } -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot [ HighConn ] { Domain: pd_top }
All Static Level Shifter Checks	vopt -pa_checks=sl	Enables all static level shifter checks. Writes Static Checks report to report.static.txt file.	
All Static Checks	vopt -pa_checks=s	Enables all static level shifter and static isolation checks.	

## Level Shifter Cell Instance Checking

If you have used the [set\\_level\\_shifter](#) -instance command in a UPF file to instantiate RTL level shifter cells, ModelSim will detect those cells and perform the following level shifting checks on them (instance checking results are written to report.static.txt):

- Incorrect Level Shifter Check

```
Total 1 Incorrect level shifters
  Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2 [
Total count: 1 ]
  1. LS( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [
connected mask: "0001" ], count:1, level shifter cell :
/tb/TOP/lsinst1_0(ls_buf), Domain: PD_mid1,
  Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
"0001" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "0001" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]
```

- Valid Level Shifter

```
Total 1 Valid level shifters
  Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2 [
Total count: 1 ]
  1. LS( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [
connected mask: "0010" ], count:1, : level shifter cell :
/tb/TOP/lsinst1_1(ls_buf), Domain: PD_mid1,
  Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
"0010" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "0010" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]
```

- Redundant Level Shifter

```
Total 1 Redundant level shifter.
  Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2 [
Total count: 1 ]
  1. LS( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "0100" ], count:1, level shifter cell :
/tb/TOP/lsinst2_0(ls_buf), Domain: PD_mid2,
  Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
"0100" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "0100" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]
```

- Not Analyzed Level Shifter

```
Total 1 Not Analyzed level shifters.
  Source power domain : PD_mid1 -> Sink power domain: PD_mid2 [
Total count: 1 ]
  1. LS( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "1000" ], count:1, level shifter cell :
/tb/TOP/lsinst2_1(ls_buf), Domain: PD_mid2,
  Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask:
"1000" ], count:1 [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/in1_bot [
connected mask: "1000" ], count:1 [ LowConn ]
```

## Reporting for a Valid Level Shifter

Specified by: `-pa_checks=svl`

**Function:** Indicates the valid level shifters that have matching voltage information and proper direction of shift.

**Message from vopt:**

```
** Note: (vopt-9693) [ UPF_LS_STATIC_CHK ] Found Total 2 Valid level shifters
```

### Report File dump (for the power domain): (report.static.txt)

```
Total 2 Valid level shifters.
Source power domain: pd_bot -> Sink power domain: pd_aon [Total count: 1]
  1. LS( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot, count:1,
level shifting strategy : my_ls [PD: pd_bot ],
  Source port : /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ] ->
  Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot2/in2_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ]

  2. LS( count: 0 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot, count:1,
level shifting strategy : my_ls [PD: pd_bot ],
  Source port : /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ] ->
  Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot3/in2_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ]

  3. LS( count: 0 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot, count:1,
level shifting strategy : my_ls [PD: pd_bot ],
  Source port : /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ] ->
  Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot4/in2_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ]

Source power domain: pd_aon -> Sink power domain: pd_top [Total count: 1]
  1. LS( count: 1 ): Candidate Port: /tb/TOP/bot2/out1_bot, count:1,
level shifting strategy : my_ls [PD: pd_aon ],
  Source port : /tb/TOP/bot2/out1_bot, count:1 [ LowConn ] ->
  Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot2/out1_bot, count:1 [ HighConn ]
```

### Report File dump (for the level shifter strategy):

```
Total 2 Valid level shifters
Level shifting strategy: my_ls, Power domain: pd_aon
  1. Candidate port: /tb/TOP/bot2/out1_bot [ count: 1 ]
  Inferred type: 'Valid' [ count: 1 ], Source port :
/tb/TOP/bot2/out1_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_aon } -> Sink port: /tb/TO
P/bot2/out1_bot [ HighConn ] { Domain: pd_top }

Level shifting strategy: my_ls, Power domain: pd_bot
  3. Candidate port: /tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot [ count: 1 ]
  Inferred type: 'Valid' [ count: 0 ], Source port :
/tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_bot } -> Sink port: /tb/TO
P/bot4/in2_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_aon }
  Inferred type: 'Valid' [ count: 0 ], Source port :
/tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_bot } -> Sink port: /tb/TO
P/bot3/in2_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_aon }
```

```
Inferred type: 'Valid' [ count: 1 ], Source port :  
/tb/TOP/bot1/out1_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_bot } -> Sink port: /tb/TO  
P/bot2/in2_bot [ LowConn ] { Domain: pd_aon }
```

---

### Note



Sometimes, you may find the level shifter count for a particular source-to-sink path may be 0. This happens when there is only one level shifter identified for insertion at that boundary (even though there are multiple fanouts possible), but the value for `set_level_shifter -location` is not specified as fanout. In that case, the level shifter insertion is counted for only one of the paths, while the other paths will have level shifter counts reported as 0.

---

## Dynamic Checking in Power Aware

Use the `-pa_checks` argument of the `vopt` command to perform more comprehensive dynamic rule checking to validate the behavior of power intent and specification in the designs. The values you specify for the `-pa_checks` argument activate dynamic checking of signals for various power conditions:

- [Dynamic Retention Checking](#)
- [Dynamic Isolation Checking](#)
- [Dynamic Level Shifter Checking](#)
- [Miscellaneous Dynamic Checking](#)
  - Toggle
  - Control Signal Corruption Checking
  - Always-On Power Domain Checking
  - Power Domain Status

## Usage Notes

The `-pa_checks` argument of the `vopt` command has numerous possible values that you can assign to enable either dynamic or static checking for Power Aware simulation.

- For a quick listing of all values for the `-pa_checks` argument, refer to [Table A-1](#).
- For additional reference information on the `vopt -pa_checks`, refer to the [vopt](#) command in the ModelSim Reference Manual.
- For a listing of static and dynamic checks according to elements defined for a given power domain, refer to [Table B-1](#).

- To specify more than one checking value for `-pa_checks`, use the `+` operator between values. For example:

```
vopt -pa_checks=rop+cp+a
```

- To enable all dynamic checks, do not specify a value for `-pa_checks`.

## Dynamic Retention Checking

You can specify any of the following values for `-pa_checks` to provide retention checking:

- rop
- rpo
- rcs
- rsa

### Note



To enable retention checking performed by all these values, specify the following:

```
vopt -pa_checks=r
```

**Table 5-3. Dynamic Retention Checks**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Power off	<code>vopt -pa_checks=rop</code>	States that there were retention signals mapped to the power domain. However, these signals were not asserted when the power was switched off.	<pre>*** Error: (vsim-8903) MSPA_RET_OFF_PSO: Time: 35 ns, Retention control (x) for the following retention elements of power domain 'PD' is not asserted during power shut down: #/tb/top/mid1/bot_latch1. # File: ./src/pa_all_checks/pcf, Line: 2, Power Domain:PD</pre>

**Table 5-3. Dynamic Retention Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Power on	vopt -pa_checks=rpo	States that there was an error in the sequence of triggering of the retention and power signal. For retention to succeed, the power should be high. However, this check is triggered when that is not the case.	# ** Error: (vsim-8904) MSPA_RET_PD_OFF: Time: 85 ns, Power for domain: 'PD' is not ON (0) when retention is enabled for retention elements: # /tb/top/mid1/bot_latch1. # File: ./src/pa_all_checks/pcf, Line: 2, Power Domain:PD
Clock/Latch enable	vopt -pa_checks=rcs	Certain Power Aware models require that the clock/latch enable must be at a certain value when retention takes place. These checks display error when this condition is not satisfied. If latch is enabled and can change its value, triggering retention can potentially cause race in the stored value. This is also a check against such conditions.	# ** Error: (vsim-8905) MSPA_RET_CLK_STATE: Time: 85 ns, LatchEn is not at proper level: 'LOW' (1) for the retention element(s) of type: AHRLA of power domain: PD. # /tb/top/mid1/bot_latch1. # File: pcf, Line: 2, Power Domain:PD  # ** Error: (vsim-8905) MSPA_RET_CLK_STATE: Time: 207 ns, Clock is not at proper level: 'LOW' (1) for the retention element(s) of type: CLRFF of power domain: PD. # /tb/top/mid1/bot_ff. # File: pcf, Line: 3, Power Domain:PD
Clock toggle	vopt -pa_checks=rsa	Some Power Aware models require that the clock not toggle when the power is down. This check helps in monitoring this condition.	# ** Error: (vsim-PA-8908) MSPA_RET_SEQ_ACT: Time: 208 ns, clock toggled during retention period for retention element(s): # /tb/top/mid1/bot_ff
All	vopt -pa_checks=r		

## Dynamic Isolation Checking

Isolation checks trigger messages when a particular isolation strategy has failed or a noise has been detected in isolating a particular hierarchy.

**Table 5-4. Dynamic Isolation Checks**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Isolation Clamp Value Check	vopt -pa_checks=icp	Ensures isolation cell is clamping to correct clamp value specified in UPF file. Catches any functional issue in isolation cell inserted in RTL or applied isolation. Performed during active isolation period.	# ** Error: (vsim-8930) MSPA_ISO_CLAMP_CHK: Time: 40 ns, Isolated port for isolation cell (strategy: iso_PD_mid2_2) on port '/tb/TOP/mid2/in2_bot' having value (x) is different from clamp value (1) during isolation period. # File: test.upf, Line: 125, Power Domain:PD_mid2
Isolation Enable Protocol Check	vopt -pa_checks=iep	Flags violation if isolation control of isolation cell/strategy is not enabled when source power domain ( power domain of driving ports) is switched OFF and sink power domain ON.	** Error: (vsim-8918) MSPA_ISO_EN_PSO: Time: 358 ns, Isolation control (0) is not enabled when power is switched OFF for the following: # Port: /tb_25/FA4_inst/FA_inst2/d.
Isolation Disable Protocol Chec	vopt -pa_checks=idp	Flags violation if isolation control of isolation cell/strategy is disabled during power shut OFF of source power domain ( power domain of driving ports) and sink power domain ON.	# ** Error: (vsim-8919) MSPA_ISO_DIS_PG: Time: 250 ns, Isolation control is disabled during power shut OFF (0) for the following: # Port: /tb/TOP/mid3/in2_bot[3:2]. # File: test.upf, Line: 113, Power Domain:PD_mid3

**Table 5-4. Dynamic Isolation Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Isolation Functionality Check	vopt -pa_checks=ifc	Ensures that when isolation is not applied, the value at isolation cell's output is same as that at its input. It is to catch any functional error because of applied isolation cell. Performed during in-active isolation period. During inactive isolation period, it will catch occurrences where value of isolated port is different than the ports' value.	** Error: (vsim-8931) MSPA_ISO_FUNC_CHK: Time: 100 ns, Isolated port for isolation cell (strategy: iso_PD_mid2) on port '/tb/TOP/mid2/in2_bot' having value (x) is different from port value (1) during non-isolation period. # File: test.upf, Line: 111, Power Domain:PD_mid2
Isolation Race Check	vopt -pa_checks=irc	The value on isolated ports should not change when isolation is enabled (at the time of assertion of isolation control) and when isolation is disabled (at the de-assertion of isolation control). This check flags any toggling of isolated port's value at assertion/de-assertion of isolation control signal.	# ** Error: (vsim-8910) MSPA_ISO_PORT_TOGGLE : Time: 50 ns, Isolated port for isolation cell (strategy: iso_PD_mid1) on port '/tb/TOP/mid1/out2_bot' toggled when its control signal is activated. # File: test.upf, Line: 70, Power Domain:PD_mid1
Isolation Toggle Check	vopt -pa_checks=it	Catches any change in isolated ports' value during isolation period (i.e in between the period when isolation is enabled till isolation is disabled). Performed during active isolation period.	** Error: (vsim-PA-8908) MSPA_ISO_ON_ACT : Time: 60 ns, /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot toggled when isolation signal was active

**Table 5-4. Dynamic Isolation Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Reset clamp (PCF only)	vopt -pa_checks=isa	Some isolation strategies require that reset value and isolation value must be same. This check ensures that the isolated value is the same at posedge of reset and at posedge of isolation enable signal.	# ** Error: (vsim-8909) MSPA_ISO_PORT_INVALID: Time: 40 ns, (iso_bot2) Port '/tb/top/output2' isolated value (0110) is different from reset value (xxxx). #File: ./src/iso_checks/pcf1, Line: 2, Power Domain: PD2
Power on (UPF only)	vopt -pa_checks=upc	Catches switching off of retention/isolation supplies during active retention/isolation period.	# ** Error: (vsim-8920) MSPA_UPF_PG_CHK: Time: 0 ns, Power for Isolation strategy: 'ISO_FA4_1_3' of power domain: 'PD_FA4_1' is switched OFF during isolation. # File: test.upf, Line: 121, Power Domain:PD_FA4_1
Missing Isolation Cell (UPF only)	vopt -pa_checks=umi	Catches failure occurring whenever source domain is OFF and sink domain is ON for a power domain crossing and isolation strategy is not specified for that domain crossing.	# ** Error: (vsim-8929) MSPA_UPF_MISSING_ISO_CHK: Time: 130 ns, Missing isolation cell for domain boundary, PD_mid1 => PD_wrapper2 for following: # Source port : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot [ connected mask: "1" ] [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/mid2/wrapper1/wrapper2/in1 [ connected mask: "1" ] [ LowConn ], # File: test.upf, Line: 25, Power Domain:--
All	vopt -pa_checks=i	Enable isolation checking performed by all arguments available to either UPF or PCF. For UPF, this value enables only iep, idp, irc, icp, ifc, and it.	

## Dynamic Level Shifter Checking

You enable dynamic checking functions for level shifters by using the `vopt -pa_checks` command. The value you specify for the `-pa_checks` argument determines the checking function performed, as shown in [Table 5-5](#).

## Operating Voltage for Dynamic Checking

It is recommended to change the operating voltages of those domains during simulation. In some cases, the dynamic checks report the operating voltage of one of the domains as 0—this happens when you have not changed the voltage on the primary power and ground pin of the domain and you are operating with default unknown voltage levels. You can change the operating voltages by using the `supply_on` or `supply_off` commands defined in the UPF SystemVerilog package.

**Table 5-5. Dynamic Level Shifter Checks**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Missing Level Shifter	<code>vopt -pa_checks=uml</code>	<p>During simulation, checks if level shifter is required between domain crossing and reports if level shifter strategy is not specified.</p> <p>Also, strategies specified with <code>set_level_shift -no_shift</code> in the UPF file are checked for any missing level shifters.</p>	<pre># ** Error: MPSA_UPF_MISSING_LS_C HK: Missing level shifters for domain boundary, pd_aon ( Operating Voltage: 2.000000 V ) =&gt; pd_top ( Opera ting Voltage: 1.000000 V ) for the following: # Source port : /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot [ LowConn ] -&gt; Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot [ HighConn ] # Time: 90 ns Scope: mspa_top.mspa_upf_top.mspa 0_pd_tb.mspa3_pd_top. mspa5_pd_aon. MPSA_UPF_MISSING_LS_C HK_0 File: src/inc_ls_dyn_check1/top.upf Line: 4</pre>

**Table 5-5. Dynamic Level Shifter Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Message
Incorrect Level Shifter	vopt -pa_checks=uil	Checks if direction of level shifters specified for domain crossing does not match direction of the voltage difference at domain crossing. For example: domain crossing requires low_to_high level shifter but level shifter specified is high_to_low, then it will be reported as incorrect.	# ** Error: MPSA_UPF_MISSING_LS_C HK: Missing level shifters for domain boundary, pd_aon ( Operating Voltage: 2.000000 V ) => pd_top ( Operating Voltage: 1.000000 V ) for the following:  # Source port : /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot [ LowConn ] -> Sink port: /tb/TOP/bot4/out1_bot [ HighConn ] # Time: 90 ns Scope: mspa_top.mspa_upf_top.mspa0_pd_tb.mspa3_pd_top.mspa5_pd_aon. MPSA_UPF_MISSING_LS_C HK_0 File: src/inc_ls_dyn_check1/top.upf Line: 4
All	vopt -pa_checks=ul	Enables all dynamic level shifter checks.	

## Miscellaneous Dynamic Checking

Table 5-6 lists values you can specify for vopt -pa\_checks that perform the following checking operations:

- Toggle
- Control Signal Corruption
- Always-On Power Domain
- Power Domain Status

**Table 5-6. Miscellaneous Dynamic Checks**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Messages
Toggle	vopt -pa_checks=t	Enables the simulator to catch a condition where inputs to the power domain toggle even when the power domain is turned off.	# ** Error: (vsim-PA-8908) MSPA_PD_OFF_ACT: Time: 36 ns, /tb/top/clk toggled during power down of power domain: PD
Control Signal Corruption	vopt -pa_checks=cp	<p>During simulation, this check helps catch conditions when the power signal to any power domain gets corrupted.</p> <p>For UPF, this check is applicable to control ports of a switch, isolation enable signal of an isolation strategy, retention save and restore signals of a retention strategy.</p>	# ** Error: (vsim-8901) MSPA_CTRL_SIG_CRPT: Time: 240 ns, Control Signal '/tb/pg_array[1]' is corrupted. (Current Value: x) #File: test.upf, Line: 29, Power Domain:PD_TOP
Always-On Power Domain (PCF only)	vopt -pa_checks=a	<p>It is possible that certain blocks of an RTL might be in an always-on power domain. Corrupting signals in this domain will result in corrupting other Power Aware blocks. This check helps to determine if all the signals in an always-on power domain are ever corrupted.</p>	# ** Error: (vsim-8911) MSPA_ALWS_ON_CRPT: Time: 0 ns, Signal /top/bot1/alw_on is corrupted.('xxz') #File: pcf, Line: 2, Power Domain:padd3

**Table 5-6. Miscellaneous Dynamic Checks (cont.)**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description	Example Messages
Power Domain Status	vopt -pa_checks=p	This check identifies when each power domain is switched on or off.	<p>MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Power domain 'PD' is powered down at time 20.</p> <p>MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Power domain 'PD' is BIASED down at time 20. (CORRUPT_ON_CHANGE)</p> <p>MSPA_PD_STATUS_INFO: Power domain 'PD' is BIASED up at time 24. (CORRUPT_ALL_ON_ACT)</p>
Glitch Detection	vopt -pa_checks=ugc	<p>Catches any spurious spikes (glitches) on control lines so that it does not cause false switching of control ports of various control logic (such as isolation/power switch and retention).</p> <p>You can use <a href="#">pa msg -glitch_window</a> command to specify time window for glitch checking.</p>	<p># ** Warning: (vsim-PA-8921) MSPA_CTRL_SIG_GLITCH : Time: 14 ns, Glitch (* -&gt; 1 -&gt; 0) detected for signal(/tb/ctrl2) acting as isolation control for (/tb/TOP/mid1/PD_mid1,iso_PD_mid1_1)</p>

## Implementing Checking at Gate Level

For Power Aware simulation on gate-level designs (PA-GLS), you can generate various level shifter and isolation checks.

### Related Topics

[Voltage Level-Shifting \(Multi-Voltage Analysis\)](#)

[Modeling Isolation](#)

## Level Shifting for Gate-Level Checking

You can create a gate-level instance of a model that will be recognized as a level shifter instance by either of the methods given below. This type of level shifter instance will be recognized for static and dynamic Level Shifter Checks.

### Method 1

Specify the Liberty `is_level_shifter` attribute as part of the module definition to identify the level shifter cell.

#### Example

```
(* is_level_shifter = 1 *)
module ls_buf(
    (*pg_type = "primary_power"*) input logic pwr_rail,
    (*pg_type = "primary_ground"*) input logic gnd_rail,
    (* level_shifter_data_pin = 1 *) input data,
    output logic out);
assign out = (data);
endmodule
```

### Method 2

Assign a level-shifting prefix or suffix string to the instance, as specified by the UPF `name_format` command.

#### Example

```
LVLHLD1BWP lsinst2_UPF_LS(.I(w2), .Z(w4));
```

## Isolation for Gate-Level Checking

A gate-level instance of a model that will be recognized as an isolation instance can occur by any of the methods given below.

### Method 1

Create this instance by specifying the Liberty `is_isolation_cell` attribute as part of the module definition to identify the isolation cell. Also, set the `isolation_cell_enable_pin = "TRUE"` on the instance enable pin.

#### Example

```
(* is_isolation_cell = 1 *)
module ISO_AND(
    (*pg_type = "primary_power"*) input logic pwr_rail,
    (*pg_type = "primary_ground"*) input logic gnd_rail,
    (*isolation_cell_enable_pin = "TRUE"*) input logic en,
    (*isolation_cell_data_pin = "TRUE"*) input data,
    output logic out);
```

```
assign out = (data & ~en);  
endmodule
```

## Method 2

Pragma information to the instantiation is generated by the synthesis application.

### Example

```
ISOLOD1BWP isoinst1(.I(o1), .Z(w1), .ISO(ctrl)); //synopsys isolation_upf  
iso_PD_mid1+PD_mid1
```

where iso\_PD\_mid1 is the UPF strategy for this isolation cell instance, and PD\_mid1 is the Power domain for which strategy has been specified.

## Method 3

Create this instance by assigning an isolation prefix or suffix string to it, as specified by the UPF name\_format command.

### Example

```
ISO isoinst2_UPF_ISO(.I(o1), .Z(w1), .ISO(ctrl));
```



# Chapter 6

## Visualization of Power Aware Operations

---

### Power Aware in the Graphical User Interface

You can use ModelSim GUI windows to visualize aspects of your Power Aware design and simulation. The following sections describe the ModelSim windows provided for Power Aware visualization:

- [Power Aware Schematic Display](#) — The Schematic window provides color coding of design elements in different power domains.
- [Power Aware Waveform Display](#) — The Wave window provides highlighting of bias, corruption, and isolation.
- [Power State and Transition Display](#) — The FMS List and FSM Viewer windows provides finite state machine information on power state tables, multi-state transitions.

### Power Aware Schematic Display

You can perform debugging at the same time you run a Power Aware simulation by using the `-debugdb` argument of the `vopt` and `vsim` commands. The results of both the Power Aware analysis and the debug operation are provided as Power Aware schematic in the Schematic window. You can also view a correlation between the UPF power intent and the design display in the Schematic window.

---

#### Note



Debugging in Power Aware is supported for RTL usage flow only—it is not available for gate-level simulation (GLS).

---

### Top-Down Debugging (From the Test Bench)

You can run Power Aware analysis and debugging from the top of the design (test bench) with or without specifying an optimized design unit. These methods resemble the conventional two-step and three-step optimization flows.

- No optimized design unit — This flow resembles conventional two-step flow, where you use the `vopt` command to specify a Power Aware simulation and debugging only; no optimization is performed. When you run the `vsim` command, it performs debugging and runs `vopt` internally to perform optimization (see [Delay Optimization](#)).

Example:

```
vlog design.v
vcom design.vhdl
vopt -pa_upf <config_file> -debugdb tb
vsim tb -pa -debugdb [-vopt]
```

- **Optimized design unit** — This flow resembles conventional three-step flow, where you use the vopt command to specify a Power Aware simulation, the name of the design unit to be optimized, and debugging,. When you run the vsim command, it begins simulation on the optimized design unit and runs debugging ([General Steps for Running Power Aware](#)).

Example:

```
vlog design.v
vcom design.vhdl
vopt -o optdu -pa_upf <config_file> -debugdb tb
vsim optdu -pa -debugdb
```

## Bottom-Up Debugging (From the Design Under Test)

You can run Power Aware analysis from the DUT hierarchy and debugging on the complete design. Running vopt -pa\_top captures the DUT hierarchy for Power Aware analysis

- **No optimized design unit** — This flow resembles conventional two-step flow, where you use the vopt command to specify a Power Aware simulation and debugging without optimization. Use the -pa\_top argument to capture the DUT hierarchy for Power Aware analysis. When you run the vsim command, it performs debugging and runs vopt internally to perform optimization (see [Delay Optimization](#)).

Example:

```
vlog design.v
vcom design.vhdl
vopt -pa_upf <config_file> tb -debugdb -pa_top /tb/dut
vsim tb -pa -debugdb [-vopt]
```

---

**Note**

If you want implement debugging with the `-pa_prefix` argument and a PCF file, the following example shows the command sequence:

```
vlog design.v
vcom design.vhdl
vopt -pa_cfg <config_file> dut -pa_prefix "/tb/dut" -pa_replacetop
<string>
vsim tb -pa -debugdb
```

---

- **Optimized design unit** — This flow resembles conventional three-step flow, where you use the `vopt` command to specify a Power Aware simulation, the name of the design unit to be optimized, and debugging. Use the `-pa_top` argument to capture the DUT hierarchy for Power Aware analysis.

Example:

```
vlog design.v
vcom design.vhdl
vopt -o optdu -pa_upf <config_file> tb -debugdb -pa_top /tb/dut
vsim optdu -pa -debugdb
```

This DUT-based flow with an optimized design unit not only does common analysis for Power Aware and debugging, but also provides flexibility to enable Power Aware analysis from specific hierarchy and do code generation in one step.

## Usage Notes

- The `-pa_top` argument is used to specify hierarchy of UPF root scope. This supports Power Aware analysis of UPF from hierarchy other than the `vopt` TOP hierarchy. If `vopt` is run from testbench (tb) and UPF scope is starting from DUT (which is instantiated in testbench as `dut_inst`), then you need to specify `vopt -pa_top /tb/<dut_inst>`.
- If `-pa_top` is specifying the hierarchy other than UPF root scope then an Error message will be displayed:

```
** Error: ./src/ss_error_1/test.upf(2): UPF: (vopt-9782) PA Top
'/tb/top/dut_inst/top_inst' is specifying incorrect hierarchy for
UPF scope 'DUT'.
```

- Do not use the `vopt -pa_prefix` and `-pa_relacetop` arguments with `-pa_top`. If you do, the `-pa_prefix` and `-pa_relacetop` arguments are ignored and a Warning message is displayed:

```
** Warning: UPF: (vopt-9780) Option "-pa_prefix/-pa_replacetop" is
not applicable with option "-pa_top". Ignoring option "-pa_prefix/-
pa_replacetop".
```

## Schematic Window Visualization for Debugging

You can open the Schematic window to view debugging results from a Power Aware analysis. In particular, these results are shown as follows:

- Power Domain — All design elements are colored and highlighted according to their respective power domains (see [Figure 6-1](#)).
  - All design elements, such as mux, flip-flops, and gates would be colored according to the power domain specification.
  - The granularity of power domain visualization is at instance level.
  - Any simulation-only power domains that are specified on a process or signal are not highlighted.
- Excluded Domains — shown as default schematic color.
  - You can define a power domain to be excluded.
    - Power Aware exclude file support (vopt -pa\_excludefile)
    - Currently, PG-type connected instances are excluded. There is no analysis information to decide whether they inherit the parent power domain, create their own, or have multiple power domains (like memories)
    - Both would be supported with instance level granularity, signal and process level exclusion would not be visualized.
- UPF Source Viewing — You can display the source text of the UPF file for power domain specifications. Power domain information can be viewed for a design element in either of the following ways:
  - Right-click and select power domain — Displays UPF source code (see [Figure 6-2](#)).
  - Hover the mouse cursor — Displays a Tool Tip that concatenates the HDL source file with the appropriate line number in the UPF source file (see [Figure 6-3](#)).

### Example 6-1. UPF File to Demonstrate Schematic Visualization for Debugging

```
set_design_top top

create_power_domain P1 -elements {dut1}
#-----
create_supply_port VDD      -domain P1
create_supply_net  VDD_NET -domain P1
connect_supply_net VDD_NET -ports { VDD }
#-----
create_supply_port GND      -domain P1
create_supply_net  GND_NET -domain P1
```

```

connect_supply_net GND_NET -ports { GND }
#-----
create_supply_net VDD_PRI -domain P1
set_domain_supply_net P1 -primary_power_net VDD_PRI -primary_ground_net
GND_NET
#----- #

create_power_switch P1_SW \
-domain P1 \
-output_supply_port {VDD_SW VDD_PRI} \
-input_supply_port {VDD_SW_In1 VDD_NET} \
-control_port {ctrl1 dut_sleep} \
-on_state {full_s1 VDD_SW_In1 {!ctrl1}} \
-off_state {off_s0 {ctrl1}}

create_power_domain P2 -elements {dut2}
#-----
create_supply_port VDD_P2 -domain P2
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain P2
connect_supply_net VDD_N -ports { VDD_P2 }
#-----
create_supply_port GND_P2 -domain P2
create_supply_net GND_N -domain P2
connect_supply_net GND_N -ports { GND_P2 }
#-----
create_supply_net VDD_P -domain P2
set_domain_supply_net P2 -primary_power_net VDD_P -primary_ground_net
GND_NET

create_power_switch P1_SW2 \
-domain P2 \
-output_supply_port {VDD_SW VDD_PRI} \
-input_supply_port {VDD_SW_In1 VDD_NET} \
-control_port {ctrl1 dut_sleep} \
-on_state {full_s1 VDD_SW_In1 {!ctrl1}} \
-off_state {off_s0 {ctrl1}}

create_power_domain P3 -elements {dut3}
#-----
create_supply_port VDD_P3 -domain P3
create_supply_net VDD_NE -domain P3
connect_supply_net VDD_NE -ports { VDD_P3 }
#-----
create_supply_port GND_P3 -domain P3
create_supply_net GND_NE -domain P3
connect_supply_net GND_NE -ports { GND_P3 }
#-----
create_supply_net VDD_PR -domain P3
set_domain_supply_net P3 -primary_power_net VDD_PR -primary_ground_net
GND_NE
create_power_switch P1_SW3 \
-domain P3 \
-output_supply_port {VDD_SW VDD_PRI} \

```

```

-input_supply_port {VDD_SW_In1 VDD_NET} \
-control_port {ctrl1 dut_sleep} \
-on_state {full_s1 VDD_SW_In1 {!ctrl1}} \
-off_state {off_s0 {ctrl1}}

```

### Example 6-2. ModelSim Commands to Run Power Aware Debugging

```

vlog -sv mid.v top.v
vopt -pa_upf test.upf top -debugdb
vsim -debugdb -pa -L mtiPA -vopt -do test.do top

```

### Example 6-3. Schematic Displays for Power Aware Debugging

Figure 6-1. Color-Coded HDL Design Elements

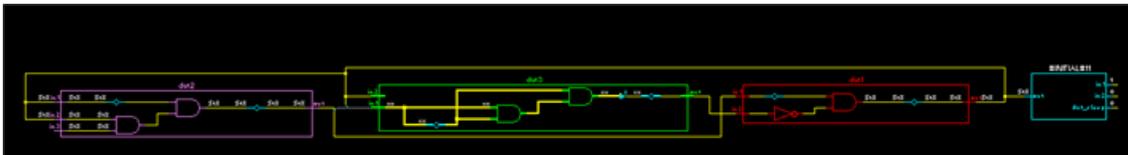
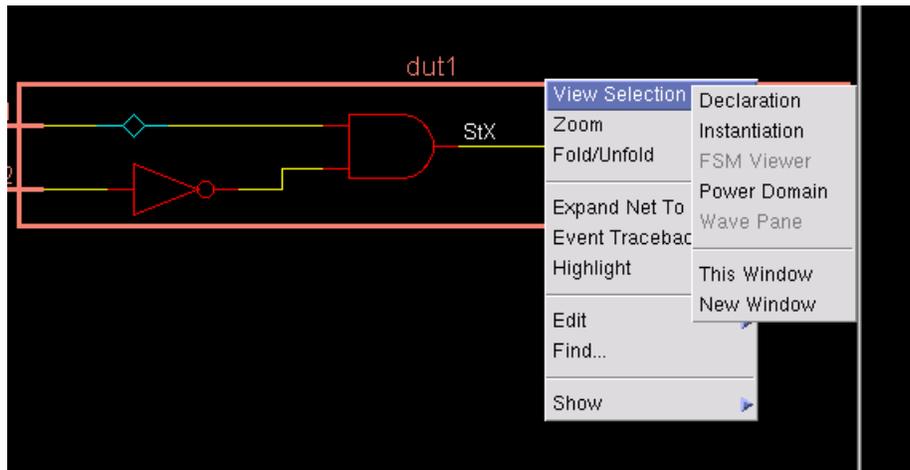
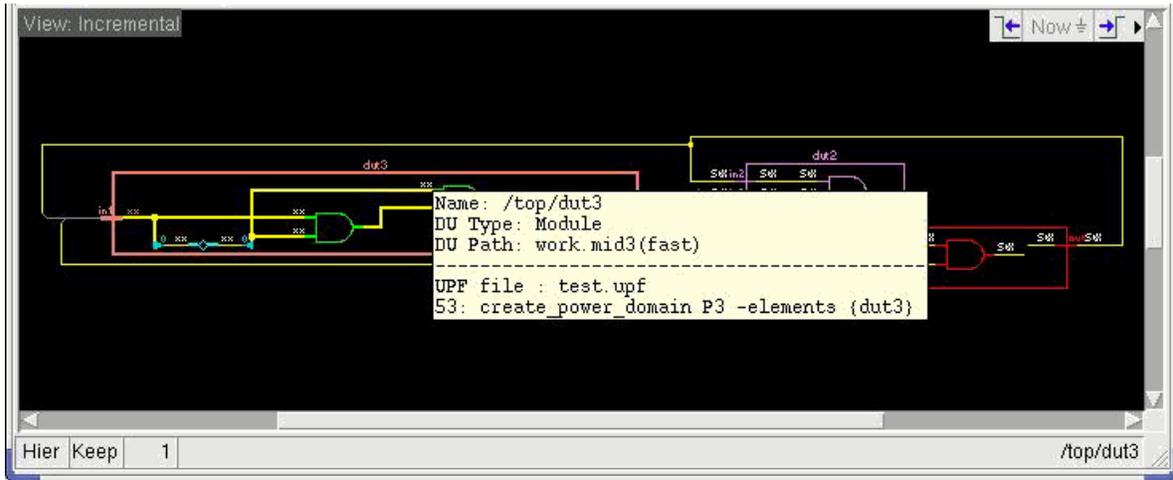


Figure 6-2. UPF Source File: Right-Click and Choose Power Domain



**Figure 6-3. UPF Source File: Hover the Mouse and View Tool Tip**



## Power Aware Waveform Display

When using the conventional Wave window display, it can be difficult to see the effects of Power Aware simulation. For example, a zero on a signal may represent normal simulation behavior, it may be the result of an isolated port clamped to zero, or it could be corruption on a bit type.

In particular, isolation has been difficult to confirm through simulation that the intent has been met. Typically, you would want results to show isolation buffer placement and clamping, identify the corrupted and clamp values associated with that buffer, and confirm that isolation happens at the proper time.

To do this, you can activate Power Aware highlighting in the Wave window, which provides visual indicators for the isolation, corruption, and biasing behavior in your simulation results. These waveform indicators provide valuable information by visually distinguishing values caused by Power Aware activity. This should help quickly determine if their power intent is correctly applied.

The visual indicators provided by Power Aware highlighting show the power state of signals viewed in the Wave window. Highlighting on waveforms appears during the interval when they are corrupted, isolated, or biased.

Figure 6-4 show an example of waveform highlighting, where:

- Bias mode is indicated by blue highlighting
- Corruption is indicated by red cross-hatch highlighting

- Isolation is indicated by green highlighting

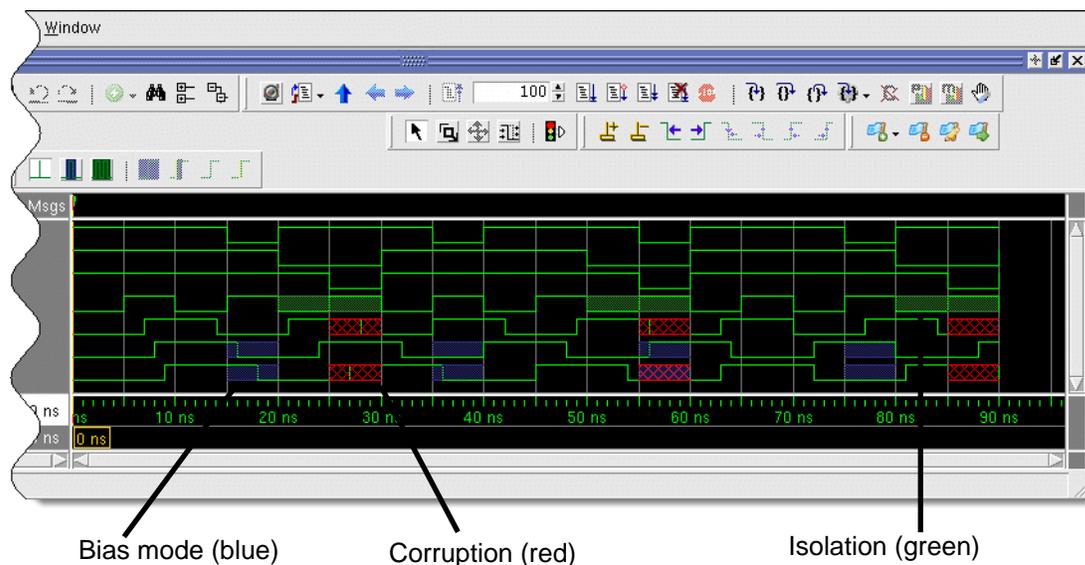
---

**i** **Tip:** When you hover the mouse cursor over an isolation highlight region, a balloon popup appears. This indicates the clamp value and location, along with the actual signal value.

Also, when you click to expand an isolation highlighted signal (on the + to the left of the signal name), associated signals are displayed that provide more information about the isolation.

---

**Figure 6-4. Power Aware Highlighting in the Wave Window**



## Using Power Aware Highlighting

To turn on Power Aware highlighting, you use `-pa_highlight` argument for the `vsim` command. This argument enables the generation of the WLF data used by the Wave window to display the highlighting.

To turn highlighting on or off, you select or unselect Power Aware waveform highlighting from the Wave Windows Preferences dialog box, which you display by choosing the following from the main menu:

Wave > Tools > Wave Preferences... > [Display tab] > PA waveform highlighting

To view Power Aware activity in post-simulation debug, use the -view argument of the vsim command, as follows:

```
vsim -view vsim.wlf
```

## Power State and Transition Display

Because power domains are no longer limited to two states (ON or OFF) and multi-voltage capability allows designs to assign different voltage levels to different states, tracking combinations of states in different power domains has become increasingly difficult.

## Power Aware State Coverage

Because ModelSim generates code coverage data for Power Aware state transitions, you can collect this data in a Unified Coverage Data Base (UCDB).

---

**i** For more information on coverage and Unified Coverage Data Base, refer to [Saving Code Coverage in the UCDB](#) in the User's Manual.

---

Power State coverage data is provided for power states added on:

- Supply port/net
- [Power State Table \(PST\) States](#)

This coverage data also shows the occurrence of undefined states.

State tracking has the following requirements:

- Coverage data
- State value at any simulation time of:
  - Ports
  - Power state tables
  - Power domains
  - Supply sets
  - Switches

Power Aware coverage data can be reported in all the modes with this UCDB. For example, during simulation, you can run the following command to view Power Aware state coverage data:

```
coverage report -pa <-detail>
```

You can use coverage data stored in UCDB from the coverage save pa.ucdb command to view Power Aware coverage data in post simulation runs with either of the following methods:

- viewcov mode

```
vsim -viewcov pa.ucdb  
coverage report -pa
```

- vcover mode

```
vcover report pa.ucdb -pa
```

## Power State Table (PST) States

A power state table (PST) defines the allowable combinations of power states of supply ports and nets—those combinations of states that can exist at the same time during simulation of the design. As a result, changing the power state supply port/nets changes the state of PST.

You can define power state tables (PSTs) to capture these combinations,

## Visualization of Power Aware States

You can use the FSM Viewer Window to display Power Aware states in a state machine bubble diagram for each of the following objects:

- Port
- Net
- Power state table (PST)

States shown in green represent the current active states; states shown in yellow represent the previous states.

---

**i** For more information on finite state machines, refer to [Finite State Machines](#), [FSM List Window](#), and [FSM Viewer Window](#) in the User's Manual.

---

## Power Aware State Machines (PASM)

In UPF, you can add states on the following objects and model a Power Aware state machine (PASM) corresponding to each:

- Supply port
- PST

You can use these PASM to obtain the Power Aware state coverage data and run time state visualization.

## Differences Between Conventional RTL FSMs and PASM

Some conceptual differences between conventional RTL FSMs and Power Aware state machines are:

- Power Aware State machines are asynchronous in nature—there use no concept of clock.
- Power Aware state machines can reach multiple states at a time(Nondeterministic Situation).
- Power Aware state machines are modeled by ModelSim.
- There are a few interdependent Power Aware state machines. For example, a PST state machine runs in accordance to supply port/net Power Aware state machines.

## Undefined States in Power Aware State Machines

There will always be an 'undefined' state associated with each of Power Aware State machines (PASM). If PASM is in none of the defined states (defined by `add_port_state` or `add_pst_state`) at a given simulation time, then PASM is considered to be in 'undefined' state. State coverage data for these PASM will show the occurrence (coverage) of 'undefined' states.

## Example of PASM in a UPF File

The following UPF file defines two power domains, PD\_ALU and PD\_RAM.

Port States have been added (with the `add_port_state` command ) on ports `out_sw_PD_ALU` and `out_sw_PD_RAM`. These ports are connected to primary supplies of these power domains.

PST states have been added(with the `add_pst_state` command) to a PST created for the primary supplies of PD\_ALU and PD\_RAM.

Power Aware state machines are modeled for two ports (`out_sw_PD_ALU` and `out_sw_PD_RAM`) and one PST (`/MyPowerStateTable`). These two port state machines are running concurrently; the PST state machine is running in conjunction with two port state machines.

## Example 6-4. Adding PST States to Power Domains in UPF File

```
upf_version 1.0
set_scope tb
create_power_domain PD_ALU -elements { CPU1/ALU1 }
create_supply_port VDD_port -domain PD_ALU
create_supply_port GND_port -domain PD_ALU
create_supply_net GND_net -domain PD_ALU
create_supply_net VDD_net -domain PD_ALU
create_supply_net PD_ALU_primary_power -domain PD_ALU
connect_supply_net GND_net -ports { GND_port }
set_domain_supply_net PD_ALU -primary_power_net PD_ALU_primary_power
-primary_ground_net GND_net
create_power_switch PD_ALU_sw \
    -domain PD_ALU \
    -output_supply_port { out_sw_PD_ALU PD_ALU_primary_power } \
    -input_supply_port { in_sw_PD_ALU VDD_net } \
    -input_supply_port { in2_sw_PD_ALU VDD_net } \
    -control_port { ctrl_sw_PD_ALU pwr_alu } \
    -on_state { NORMAL_WORKING in_sw_PD_ALU {
ctrl_sw_PD_ALU } } \
    -off_state { OFF_STATE {!ctrl_sw_PD_ALU} }
add_port_state PD_ALU_sw/out_sw_PD_ALU \
-state {full_on 4.2}\
-state {alu_norm 3.2}\
    -state {off off}

#PD_RAM Power Domain
#####
create_power_domain PD_RAM -elements { CPU1/RAM1 }
create_supply_port VDD_PD_RAM_port -domain PD_RAM
create_supply_port GND_PD_RAM_port -domain PD_RAM
create_supply_net VDD_PD_RAM_net -domain PD_RAM
create_supply_net GND_PD_RAM_net -domain PD_RAM
create_supply_net PD_RAM_primary_power -domain PD_RAM
#####
## connect supply ports to supply nets
#####
connect_supply_net GND_PD_RAM_net -ports { GND_PD_RAM_port }
set_domain_supply_net PD_RAM -primary_power_net PD_RAM_primary_power
-primary_ground_net GND_PD_RAM_net
#####
# Header switch for PD_RAM
#####
create_power_switch PD_RAM_sw \
    -domain PD_RAM \
    -output_supply_port { out_sw_PD_RAM PD_RAM_primary_power } \
    -input_supply_port { in_sw_PD_RAM VDD_PD_RAM_net } \
    -control_port { ctrl_sw_PD_RAM pwr_ram } \
    -on_state { normal_working in_sw_PD_RAM { ctrl_sw_PD_RAM } } \
    -off_state { off_state {!ctrl_sw_PD_RAM} }

#####
# Adding states for output port of the switch
#####
add_port_state PD_RAM_sw/out_sw_PD_RAM \
-state {full_on 4.2 } \
```

```
-state {ram_norm 3}\
-state {off off}

#Creating pst for ALU and RAM combination for Design/PST FSM
create_pst MyPowerStateTable -supplies {PD_ALU_primary_power
PD_RAM_primary_power}
add_pst_state Reboot -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {off ram_norm}
add_pst_state Sleep -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {alu_norm off}
add_pst_state Hibernate -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {alu_norm ram_norm}
add_pst_state Complete_on -pst MyPowerStateTable -state {full_on full_on}
```

## Using Power Aware State Coverage

To enable Power Aware state coverage and visualization, you would run the following command sequence for the two-step flow:

```
vopt dut -pa_upf test.upf
vsim -pa dut -L mtiPA -cover
```

To obtain the Power Aware state coverage data, run either of the following commands with the `-pa` argument:

```
coverage report -pa
vcover report -pa
```

## Visualization Of Power Aware State Machines

State machine information is displayed in the GUI within the following windows:

- [Power Aware State Machine List Window](#)
- [Power Aware State Machine Viewer Window](#)

---

**i** For more information on the display of finite state machines in the GUI, refer to [FSM List Window](#) and [FSM Viewer Window](#) in the User's Manual.

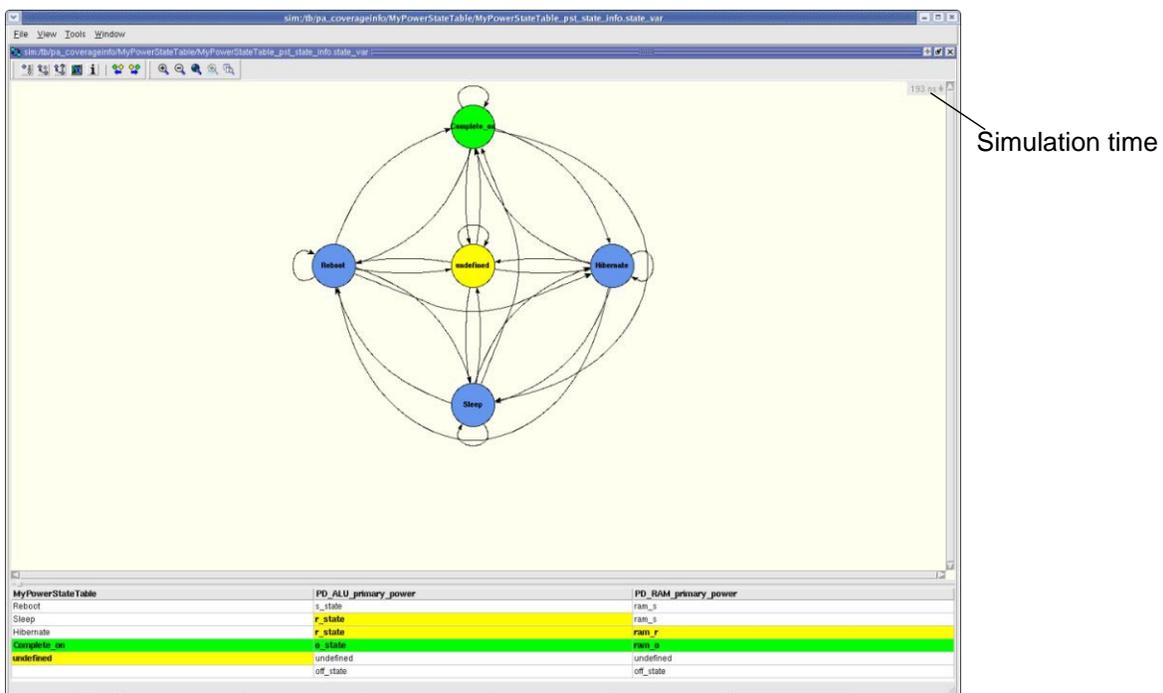
---



- Bubbles or blocks shown in yellow represent the previous states of the Power Aware State machine.
- Power Aware state machines for PST s show a combined display of bubble and tabular representation.
- Hovering the mouse over a cell with truncated text will display the full text in a popup window.
- There is a set of previous/next toolbar buttons associated with each of the Power Aware state machine. These toolbar buttons display all the next/previous events of corresponding Power Aware state machine. These tool bar buttons for Power State Table (PST) Power Aware state machine will show all the next/prev events including next/prev events constituting Power Aware State machines of concerned supply ports/nets. Note that with PST table hidden, these tool bar buttons will show next/prev events of PST Power Aware State machine only.

Figure 6-6 shows the FSM Viewer window with a combined (tabular and bubble) representation of a power state table.

**Figure 6-6. FSM Viewer Window for Power State Table PASM**



Supply ports in the design are assigned Power Aware states by the add\_port\_state command in UPF. Power Aware state machines for supply ports are represented in a state machine bubble diagram.

Figure 6-7 shows the Power Aware state machine for the out\_sw\_PD\_ALU supply port.

Figure 6-7. PASM Display for ALU Supply Port

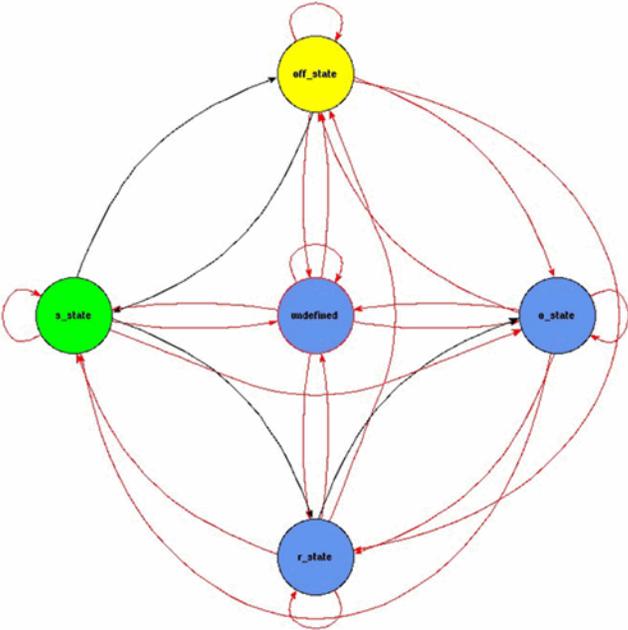
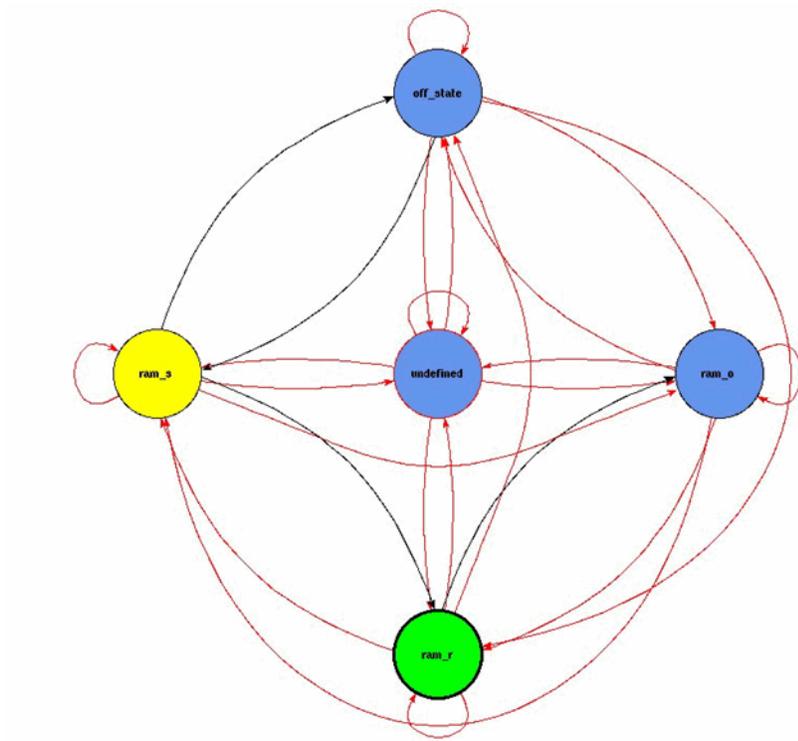


Figure 6-8 shows the Power Aware state machine for the out\_sw\_PD\_RAM supply port.

**Figure 6-8. PASM Display for RAM Supply Port**





# Appendix A

## Power Aware Commands and Options

---

### Note



The functionality described in this chapter requires an additional license feature for ModelSim SE. Refer to the section "[License Feature Names](#)" in the Installation and Licensing Guide for more information or contact your Mentor Graphics sales representative.

---

This appendix provides reference information on the following:

- [ModelSim Commands Used for Power Aware](#) — a summary of the arguments for the vopt and vsim commands that you use to implement a Power Aware simulation.
- [Additional Commands You Can Use with Power Aware](#) — a summary of Tcl commands that you can use to control a Power Aware simulation.
- [Power Aware Messages](#) — basic information on message handling for Power Aware simulation.
- [Excluding Design Elements from Power Aware](#) — a description of how to use vopt -pa\_excludefile to skip Power Aware processing for any module, its instances in a particular hierarchical path in the design, or signals in the design.
- [Voltage Level-Shifting \(Multi-Voltage Analysis\)](#)
- [Restricting Isolation and Level Shifting on a Port](#)
- [Simulating Designs Containing Macromodels](#)
- [Creating Feedthrough For RTL Conversion Functions](#)

## ModelSim Commands Used for Power Aware

Tables A-1 and A-2 list the arguments for the `vopt` and `vsim` commands that you use to run a Power Aware simulation. Refer to the *ModelSim Reference Manual* for a more comprehensive description of these commands and their arguments.

**Table A-1. Power Aware Arguments for `vopt`**

<b>vopt Argument</b>	<b>Argument Value(s)</b>
-pa_all	<i>none</i>
-pa_out	<i>none</i>
-pa_behavlogfile	<filename>
-pa_ce	o   os   osw   sc   scb
-pa_cfg	<filename>
-pa_connectpgpin	i   a   e
-pa_dbgstatic	msk   rsn
-pa_defertop	<i>none</i>
-pa_checks=	rop   rpo   rcs   rsa   r   icp   iep   idp   irc   ifc   it   isa   upc   umi   i   uml   uil   ul   t   cp   a   p   npu   ugc   smi   sri   sii   svi   sni   sdi   si   sml   sil   srl   snl   svl   sdl   sl   s
-pa_checkseq=	"<t1> [<unit>] [...<tn>]"
-pa_disable=	lowerboundary   detectiso   detecttls   detectret   insertiso   inserttls   relatedsupplies   sourcesink   anonupfobjects   10.1features
-pa_dbgstatic	msk   rsn
-pa_dumpupf	<filename>
-pa_enable=	lowerboundary   detectiso   detecttls   detectret   insertiso   inserttls   relatedsupplies   sourcesink   anonupfobjects   10.1features
-pa_excludedelayedbuffer	<i>none</i>
-pa_excludefile	<filename>
-pa_genrpt=	[{nv   v}] [{us   ud   u}] [b] [pa] [de]
-pa_gls	<i>none</i>
-pa_hiersep	<alphanum_character>
-pa_intcrptval0	<i>none</i>

**Table A-1. Power Aware Arguments for vopt (cont.)**

<b>vopt Argument</b>	<b>Argument Value(s)</b>
-pa_lib	<library_pathname>
-pa_libertylibs	<database_pathname>
-pa_lsthreshold	<real>
-pa_modeltype=	2
-pa_nopcfctrlcheck	<i>none</i>
-pa_prefix	<hier_path>
-pa_replacetop	<string>
-pa_reportdir	<pathname>
-pa_reportfile	<filename>
-pa_rtlinfo	<i>none</i>
-pa_tclfile	<filename>
-pa_top	<pathname>
-pa_upf	<filename>
-pa_upfextensions	ignorepgports   ignorepgportsaon / relatedsnets nonlrmstatenames / s / genblk / v / nonameclash / altgenname / all / default
-pa_upfsyntaxchecks	<i>none</i>

**Table A-2. Power Aware Arguments for vsim**

<b>vsim Argument</b>	<b>Argument Value</b>
-pa	<i>none</i>
-pa_gls	<i>none</i>
-pa_lib	<pathname>
-pa_top=	<pathname>
-pa_zcorrupt	<i>none</i>

## Using -pa\_enable and -pa\_disable

The values for the -pa\_enable and -pa\_disable arguments to the vopt command listed in [Table A-1](#) allow you to enable or disable certain actions that ModelSim performs during Power Aware simulation. Because these actions (features) were first provided for Release 10.1, you can use these arguments to control compatibility with previous releases.

## Syntax

```
vopt -pa_enable=[lowerboundary][detectiso][detectls] [detectret] [insertiso] [insertls]
[relatedsupplies] [sourcesink] [anonupfobjects] [10.1features]
```

```
vopt -pa_disable=[lowerboundary][detectiso][detectls] [detectret] [insertiso] [insertls]
[relatedsupplies] [sourcesink] [anonupfobjects] [10.1features]
```

## Description

- Each argument uses the same set of values, which means using a value with either argument toggles that action from its default state or from a previously specified state.
- [Table A-3](#) lists each value, a brief description of the Power Aware action that ModelSim performs, and which argument ModelSim uses for that value by default.
- You can specify one or more values for either argument—there is no order dependency when specifying multiple values.
- To specify more than one value for either argument, use the + operator between values. For example:

```
vopt -pa_enable=lowerboundary+insertiso
vopt -pa_disable=sourcesink+relatedsupplies
```

- To enable all values, specify the following:

```
vopt -pa_enable=10.1features
```

- To disable all values, specify the following:

```
vopt -pa_disable=10.1features
```

**Table A-3. Power Aware Actions for vopt -pa\_enable and -pa\_disable**

Value	Action	Default
lowerboundary	Perform isolation on the ports present in lower boundary of power domain.	-pa_disable
detectiso	Detect isolation cells present in the design.	-pa_disable
detectls	Detect level-shifter cells present in the design.	-pa_disable
detectret	Detect retention cells present in the design.	-pa_disable
insertiso	Insert isolation cells.	-pa_enable

**Table A-3. Power Aware Actions for vopt -pa\_enable and -pa\_disable (cont.)**

Value	Action	Default
insertls	Inserts level-shifter cells.	-pa_enable
relatedsupplies	Define related supplies attributes on the boundary ports (accessible pins of hard macros).	-pa_enable
sourcesink	Apply pathwise analysis of isolation or level-shifting.	-pa_enable
anonupobjects	Create anonymous supply sets or nets for future replacement by associated objects.	-pa_disable
10.1features	Enable or disable all actions (features)	—

## Additional Commands You Can Use with Power Aware

Questa SIM supports the following additional Tcl commands that are not UPF commands, which that you specify in either a UPF file (vopt -pa\_upf) or a Tcl file (vopt -pa\_tclfile).

- [set\\_corruption\\_extent](#)
- [set\\_feedthrough\\_object](#)
- [set\\_related\\_supply\\_net](#)

## set\_corruption\_extent

### Syntax

```
set_corruption_extent -domains {<domain_name> [<domain_name> ...]}  
-ce o|os|osw|sc|scb
```

where

domain\_name — the name of any power domain in the current scope

-ce — corruption extent, which takes one of the following values:

o — sets the corruption extent to outputs only.

os — sets the corruption extent to outputs and sequential elements.

osw — sets the corruption extent to outputs and sequential and non-sequential wires.

sc — sets the corruption extent to sequential and combination logic (based on UPF corruption semantics honoring all sequential and combination logic for corruption—excluding any buffers in the path for corruption).

scb — sets the corruption extent to sequential, combination, and buffer logic.

### Description

Specify in either a UPF file (vopt -pa\_upf) or a Tcl file (vopt -pa\_tclfile).

Changes the corruption extent of the power domains created by the UPF file.

### Example

Change the corruption semantics of domains P1 and P2 created in the scope tb to outputs only.

```
set_scope tb  
set_corruption_extent -domains {P1 P2} -ce o
```

## set\_feedthrough\_object

### Syntax

```
set_feedthrough_object -function <function_list> [-package <package_name> ]
```

where

- function <function\_list> — a required list of one or more function names (you must specify at least one function name).
- package <package\_name> — detects only functions from the specified package, package\_name. Optional.

### Description

Allows conversion functions to be treated as feedthroughs for UPF-based corruption. The objective is to detect conversion functions in the PA-RTL and treat them as feedthrough paths. Specify in either a UPF file (vopt -pa\_upf) or a Tcl file (vopt -pa\_tclfile).

## set\_related\_supply\_net

### Syntax

```
set_related_supply_net -object_list <objects> -reset -power <power_net_name>  
-ground <ground_net_name>
```

where

- object\_list <objects> — List of ports or pins that is to have a related power or ground supply defined. Pins or ports are referenced relative to the active scope.
- power <power\_net\_name> — The related supply power net, referenced relative to the active scope.
- ground <ground\_net\_name> — The related supply ground net, referenced relative to the active scope.
- reset — not currently supported.

### Description

Allows associating an instance signal pin or a hierarchical port with specific supply nets. Thus, you can create a supply net based on supply pins so you can specify your related supplies of cells.

Specify with vopt -pa\_upfextensions (see [Using -pa\\_upfextensions](#)).

ModelSim internally maps this command to the [set\\_port\\_attributes](#) command that you specify in the UPF file, specifically the following arguments:

```
-related_power_pin <power_net_name>  
-related_ground_pin <ground_net_name>
```

Note that v2.0 of the UPF standard interprets the `related_power_net` and `related_ground_net` attributes as defining the driver supply set of an output port or the receiver supply set of an input port. The standard also declares that it is an error if the actual driving logic is present and its supply is not the same as the driver supply, or if the actual receiving logic is present and its supply is not the same as the receiver supply.

As a result, use of `set_related_supply_net` for any purpose other than specifying the driver supply set of a macro model output or the receiver supply set of a macro model input may generate errors.

Specifically, ModelSim gives a vopt error message (vopt-9814). You can use the `-warning` argument of vopt to change the severity of this message to a warning so that simulation may continue:

```
vopt -warning 9814
```

---

**i** Refer to [Power Aware Messages](#) for more information on changing the level of message severity.

---

## Power Aware Messages

You can use the following `vopt` arguments to suppress or control the severity of messages that occur while running Power Aware:

- `-suppress <msg_num>`  
Suppresses a particular message by its ID number (`msg_num`).  
Messages are not displayed and processing continues.
- `-warning <msg_num>`  
Changes the severity of a particular message to Warning.  
Messages are displayed and processing continues.
- `-error <msg_num>`  
Changes the severity of a particular message to Error.  
Messages are displayed and processing stops.
- `-note <msg_num>`  
Changes the severity of a particular message to Note.  
Messages are displayed and processing continues.

Applying different severity levels allows you to prevent stoppage of `vopt` operation or inconsistent behavior in processing and resolve phases when the error is encountered. An example of this is when `vopt` stops for errors in the processing phase, while continuing when the same errors occur in the resolve phase.



When you suppress or lower the severity of an error message, you may not see the desired result, since the corresponding UPF command behavior gets bypassed or ignored.

---

### Usage

- Use `vopt` to suppress or change the severity of a single message:

```
vopt -pa_upf top.upf -o t tb -suppress <msg_num>
```

- Use `vopt` to suppress or change the severity of multiple messages:

```
vopt -pa_upf top.upf -o t tb -warning <msg_num1>, <msg_num2>,  
<msg_num3>
```

## Excluding Design Elements from Power Aware

You can exclude Power Aware processing for any module, instance, or signal within a particular hierarchical path in a design.

### Usage

```
vopt -pa_excludefile <filename> [-pa_enhexclude]
```

### Description

This argument skips Power Aware processing for any module, its instances in a particular hierarchical path in the design, or signals in the design, which you specify in an exclude file, <filename>. To exclude instances or signals, use the -pa\_enhexclude option to this argument.

<filename> — The name of a text file that specifies modules, instances, or signals you want to exclude from Power Aware verification. Each entry in the file must be of the following form:

```
<module_name> [-a] <hier_path>
```

where

module\_name can be any regular expression (enclosed in quotation marks).

-a is an optional switch that enables recursive exclusion of module\_name.

hier\_path is the full pathname to the instance of the module you want to exclude. When a module instance is skipped, ModelSim displays the following message:

```
** Note: (vopt-9691) Excluding power aware module '<module_name>'  
in path '<hier_path>'.
```

When used with -a, specifying hier\_path limits the recursive exclusion to a particular scope.

-pa\_enhexclude — Uses the exclude file to specify a signal or an instance in a given module in a particular hierarchical path in the design (signal names and instance path names can be a regular expression enclosed in quotation marks). To exclude a design element in the whole hierarchy, do not specify an instance path name. For signal or instance exclusion, each entry in the exclude file must be of the following form:

```
<module_name> [instance_pathname] [[-s | -r] signal_name {, signal_name...}]
```

where -s specifies signal exclusion, -r specifies recursion (applied to s, where all occurrences inside only that module scope will be excluded).

### Examples—Excluding a Module

The following examples show entries in the exclude file not using the -pa\_enhexclude option.

1. Directs Power Aware processing to skip all instantiation of bot\_mod found within the top hierarchy.

- Entry in the exclude file:

```
bot_mod
```

- Log messages for the vopt command:

**\*\* Note: (vopt-9691) Excluding power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1'.**

**\*\* Note: (vopt-9691) Excluding power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/t2'.**

2. Directs Power Aware processing to skip all instantiation of bot\_mod2 and bot\_mod3 found within the top hierarchy.

- Entry in the exclude file:

```
bot_mod[2-3] /top/mid
```

- Log messages for the vopt command:

**\*\* Note: (vopt-9691) Excluding power aware module 'bot\_mod2' in path '/top/inst1'.**

**\*\* Note: (vopt-9691) Excluding power aware module 'bot\_mod3' in path '/top/inst2'.**

## Examples—Excluding Signals/Nets

The following examples show entries in the exclude file using the -pa\_enhexclude option.

1. Directs Power Aware processing to skip signal/net sig, present in all instantiations of bot\_mod found within the instance /top/t1.

- Entry in the exclude file:

```
bot_mod /top/t1 -s sig
```

- Log messages for the vopt command:

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/sig'.**

A warning message will be reported if there was no match found in exclude file, for signal sig in module bot\_mod in instance /top/t1:

**\*\* Warning: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9014) No match found in exclude file, for signal 'sig' in module 'bot\_mod' in instance path '/top/t1'.**

2. Directs Power Aware processing to skip signals or nets sig2, sig3, sig4, present in all instantiation of bot\_mod found within the instance /top/t1.

- Entry in the exclude file:

```
bot_mod /top/t1 -s sig[2-4]
```

- Log messages for the vopt command:

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig3' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/sig3'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig4' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/sig4'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig2' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/sig2'.**

3. Directs Power Aware processing to skip signal or net, sig, present in the scope of all instantiations of bot\_mod found within the instance /top/t1.

- Entry in the exclude file:

```
bot_mod /top/t1 -sr sig
```

- Log messages for the vopt command:

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/blk/fg\_\_5/sig'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/blk/fg\_\_4/sig'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/blk/fg\_\_3/sig'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/blk/fg\_\_2/sig'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/blk/fg\_\_1/sig'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/blk/sig'.**

**\*\* Note: exclude.txt(1): (vopt-9013) Excluding signal 'sig' in power aware module 'bot\_mod' in path '/top/t1/sig'.**

## Voltage Level-Shifting (Multi-Voltage Analysis)

This section describes voltage level-shifting capability of Power Aware, which is primarily implemented as Unified Power Format (UPF) commands and Power Aware arguments to the ModelSim vopt command.

The supply network state provides information about the possible power states of the network. ModelSim uses that information to detect level shifters wherever a signal crosses from a power domain operating at a voltage level that may be different than the voltage level of another power domain to which it connects (also known as multi-voltage analysis).

## Power State Tables

ModelSim can use information from a Power State Table (PST) in Power Aware analysis. PSTs are also parsed and dumped to the UPF report file (report.upf.txt). It is assumed that the PST is complete; any domains that are not mentioned in PST will not be used for analysis.

The traversal does not skip any power switches encountered in the supply network path. The traversal goes only behind direct connectivity of supply ports and supply nets that are created in UPF. It does not go behind a supply net present in the design or the UPF supply net/port that is directly connected to an HDL supply net or port.

## Example

```
Pst top_pst, File:../UPF/rtl_top.upf(127).
Header ==>                : VDD_0d99 VDD_0d81 VSS
ON  ../UPF/rtl_top.upf(133): ON      ON      ON
OFF ../UPF/rtl_top.upf(134): ON      ON      ON

List of possible states on:
VDD_0d99 [ source supply port: VDD_0d99, File:../UPF/rtl_top.upf(21)]
1. ON: 0.99,1.10,1.21

VDD_0d81 [ source supply port: VDD_0d81, File:../UPF/rtl_top.upf(22)]
1. ON: 0.81,0.90,0.99

VSS [ source supply port: VSS, File:../UPF/rtl_top.upf(23)]
1. ON: 0.00,0.00,0.00
```

## Level Shifter Specification

### Reporting

ModelSim parses the set\_level\_shifter command in the UPF file and selects a list of candidate ports for level shifter insertion. These ports are also dumped into the UPF report file (report.upf.txt) as in the following example:

Report file dump (report.upf.txt):

```
Level Shifter Strategy: my_ls, File: ./src/simple_mv7/test.upf(63).
Rule (high_to_low), Threshold (0), Applies_to (outputs).
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:
1. Signal : /tb/TOP/bot2/out1_bot

Level Shifter Strategy: my_ls_bot3, File: ./src/simple_mv7/test.upf(69).
Rule (low_to_high), Threshold (0), Applies_to (outputs).
Level Shifted Candidate Ports:
1. Signal : /tb/TOP/bot3/out1_bot
```

## Threshold Control for Level Shifters

You can set a global threshold level for a Power Aware analysis containing multiple voltage levels using the following command:

```
vopt -pa_lsthreshold <real>
```

where <real> is any numerical value that specifies a voltage threshold.

You can use this argument with the vopt command when you know that level shifting is not required for particular range of voltage differences. You can then specify a global threshold—otherwise ModelSim will flag missing level shifter errors even if the potential difference between two domains is within an acceptable range.

## Level Shifter Instances

If you have used the `set_level_shifter -instance` command in a UPF file to instantiate level shifters, ModelSim will detect those instances and perform level shifting checks on them (see [Static Checking in Power Aware](#)).

An instance is recognized as a level shifter instance in any of the following cases:

- The level shifter instance is specified with `-instance` argument of `set_level_shifter` command.
- For GLS design, any of the following:
  - The `is_level_shifter` attribute is specified for the module. Example:

```
(* is_level_shifter = 1 *)
module ls_buf(
    (*pg_type = "primary_power"*) input logic pwr_rail,
    (*pg_type = "primary_ground"*) input logic gnd_rail,
    (* level_shifter_data_pin = 1 *) input data,
    output logic out);
assign out = (data);
endmodule
```

- Instantiation has prefix or suffix string for level shifter specified with `name_format` UPF command. Example:

```
LVLHLD1BWP lsinst2_UPF_LS(.I(w2), .Z(w4));
```

## Limitations on Level Shifting

- Support for VHDL and Verilog synthesizable data types. Restricted support for SystemVerilog (array, struct).

- Level shifters not specified at the power-domain boundary are not considered for multi-voltage checks.

## Restricting Isolation and Level Shifting on a Port

The `set_isolation` and `set_level_shifter` UPF commands each have `-source` and `-sink` arguments, which you can use to apply isolation or level shifting only to certain paths of a specific port in your design. When you specify either or both of these arguments, ModelSim identifies all the paths through given port and applies isolation or level shifting to only those paths whose driver and receiver supplies match the specified source and sink supplies.

### Isolation and Level Shifting Behavior

Using the `-source` and `-sink` arguments affects Isolation and Level Shifter insertion behavior in the following ways:

- All the paths passing through a given port are determined.  
To determine the path, all the buffers, isolation cells, and level shifter cells are treated as feed through and actual drivers and receivers are determined.
- Isolation or level shifter cell is inserted after matching source or sink supplies, if specified. To match equivalent supplies, the driver nets of primary power and ground nets are matched.
- The `-location` argument (for both commands) determines the placement of an isolation or level shifter cell. You can specify any of the following values for `set_isolation -location` or `set_level_shifter -location`:
  - Fanout — isolation or level shifter cell is placed at all fanout locations (sinks) of the port.
  - Fanin — isolation or level shifter cell is placed at all fanin locations (sources) of the port.
  - Faninout — isolation or level shifter cell is placed at all fanout locations (sinks) for each output port, or at all fanin locations (sources) for each input port.
  - Parent — isolation or level shifter cell is placed in the parent of the domain whose interface port is being isolated or shifted.
  - Automatic — same as Parent.
  - Self — isolation or level shifter cell is placed inside the domain whose interface port is being isolated or shifted.

- Sibling — same as Self.

---

**Note**



Level shifter cells are not currently inserted in RTL—their effect will not be present in simulation. Only Power Aware checking (vopt -pa\_checks) will validate these cells.

---

## How to Apply the -source and -sink Arguments

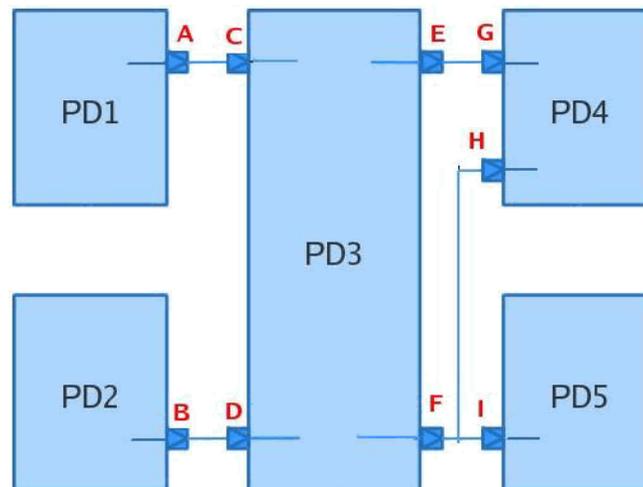
Figure A-1 shows a block diagram of power domains, ports, and paths for use in the examples that follow.

### Example A-1. UPF Commands That Define Power Domains

The following list shows fragments of UPF commands used to define the diagram of Figure A-1:

```
create_supply_set PD1_SS ...
create_power_domain PD1 ...
associate_supply_set PD1_SS -handle PD1.primary
create_supply_set PD2_SS ...
create_power_domain PD2 ...
associate_supply_set PD2_SS -handle PD2.primary
create_power_domain PD3 ...
```

**Figure A-1. Supply Paths to Power Domains**



### Source Examples

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port C , and isolates Path A-C.

```
set_isolation iso1 -domain PD3 -source PD1_SS -location parent ...
```

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port B, and isolates Path B-D.

```
set_isolation iso2 -domain PD3 -source PD2_SS -location fanin ...
```

## Sink Examples

- Isolation cells will be placed at Port G and Port H, and isolate Path E-G and F-H.

```
set_isolation iso1 -domain PD3 -sink PD4_SS -location fanout ...
```

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port H, and isolate Path F-H.

```
set_isolation iso2 -domain PD3 -elements {F} -sink PD4_ss  
-location fanout ...
```

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port F, and isolate Path F-H.

```
set_isolation iso3 -domain PD3 -elements {F} -sink PD4_ss  
-location parent ...
```

## Differential Supply Examples

The `set_isolation` command provides an argument (`-diff_supply_only`) that prevents applying isolation into the path from the driver to the receiver for an isolation strategy defined on a port.

For these examples, assume that PD2 , PD3 and PD4 all have same supply sets:

```
create_supply_set PD2_SS ...  
create_power_domain PD2 ...  
associate_supply_set PD2_SS -handle PD2.primary  
associate_supply_set PD2_SS -handle PD3.primary  
associate_supply_set PD2_SS -handle PD4.primary
```

- Isolation cells will be placed at Port C and Port F , and isolate Path A-C and F-I. Path F-H will not be isolated.

```
set_isolation iso1 -domain PD3 -applies_to both -diff_supply_only TRUE  
-location parent ..
```

- Isolation cells will be placed at Port A and Port I, and isolate Path A-C and F-I.

```
set_isolation iso2 -domain PD3 -applies_to both -diff_supply_only TRUE  
-location faninout ..
```

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port A, and isolates Path A-C.

```
set_isolation iso3 -domain PD3 -applies_to both -source PD1_SS  
-diff_supply_only TRUE -location faninout ..
```

## Multiple Strategies Example

- Same port F is isolated with different Sinks. Here, Port H will be isolated with iso1 and port I with iso2.

```
set_isolation iso1 -domain PD3 -elements {F} -sink PD4_SS
  -location fanout -clamp 1 ...

set_isolation iso2 -domain PD3 -elements {F} -sink PD5_SS
  -location fanout -clamp 0 ...
```

## Multiple Isolation Cells Examples

Refer to [Figure A-2](#) for the following examples on using multiple isolation cells.

- Since only source is specified. All output port paths will be isolated and Isolation cells will be placed at Port G , H and I. Two Isolation cells at Port H and I will be placed for same port F.

```
set_isolation iso1 -domain PD3 -source PD3_SS -location fanout ...
```

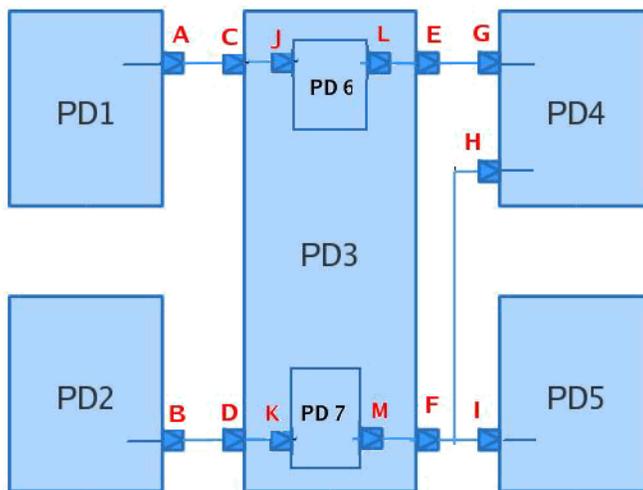
- Since only source is specified. Isolation cells will be placed at Port E and F. Only one Isolation Cell will be placed at Port F which will isolate both Paths F-H and F-I.

```
set_isolation iso2 -domain PD3 -source PD3_SS -location parent ...
```

- For both strategies, Isolation will be placed at Port G. Relative ordering will be maintained with iso3 cell in front of iso4 cell, means Iso3 -> iso4 -> port G.

```
set_isolation iso3 -domain PD3 -elements {E} -location fanout
  -clamp 1 ...
set_isolation iso4 -domain PD4 -elements {G} -location parent
  -clamp 0 ...
```

**Figure A-2. Multiple Isolation Cells**



### Multiple Strategies in a Path Examples

Refer to [Figure A-2](#) for the following examples on using multiple strategies in a path.

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port H and isolates path M-F-H.

```
set_isolation iso1 -domain PD7 -sink PD4 -location fanout ...
```

- Isolation cell will be placed at Port M, and only path M-F-H will isolate. This means the clamp value will be seen at Port H. All other ports M, F and I will not have clamp value during power down.

```
set_isolation iso2 -domain PD7 -sink PD4 -location parent ...
```

- Three isolation cells will be placed at Port H, with relative ordering as follows:

```
iso3->iso4->iso5->port H
```

```
set_isolation iso3 -domain PD7 -sink PD4 -location fanout ...
```

```
set_isolation iso4 -domain PD3 -elements {F} -sink PD4  
-location fanout ...
```

```
set_isolation iso5 -domain PD4 -elements {H} -location parent ..
```

- Two isolation cells will be placed at Port F and only port H will be isolated, with relative ordering as follows:

Port F ->iso6->iso7

This means the clamp value (o/p of iso7) will be seen at Port H. All other ports (M , F and I) will not have clamp value during power down.

```
set_isolation iso6 -domain PD7 -sink PD4 -location fanout ...  
  
set_isolation iso7 -domain PD3 -elements {F} -sink PD4  
-location parent ...
```

## Simulating Designs Containing Macromodels

A macromodel is a block-level model in a design that has been optimized for power, area, or timing and silicon-tested. Defining the power intent for a macromodel depends on whether you have access to its internal structure (logic and topology). If internal access is not available, you can specify power intent only on its external pins—this is referred to as a “hard macro.”

To specify power intent for a hard macro, you define related supplies attributes on these accessible pins as boundary ports. Similarly, you can isolate a hard macro from the rest of the design by applying the isolation on its boundary ports.

Specifying power intent for a hard macro is available by any of the following methods:

- In a UPF file with the following commands:
  - [set\\_port\\_attributes](#)
  - [set\\_pin\\_related\\_supply](#)
- Related supplies attributes in RTL
- Using a Liberty file in GLS

## Using UPF Commands

To specify hard macro power intent, use the UPF commands and their arguments described below.

## Command

[set\\_port\\_attributes](#)

## Arguments

- ***-receiver\_supply***

When `-receiver_supply` is attributed on a port, it specifies the supply of the logic reading the port. If the receiving logic is not within the logic design starting at the design root, it is presumed the receiver supply is the supply for the receiving logic.

- ***-driver\_supply***

When `-driver_supply` is attributed on a port, it specifies the supply of the logic driving the port. If the driving logic is not within the logic design starting at the design root, it is presumed the driver supply is the supply for the driver logic and the port is corrupted when the driver supply is in a simstate other than NORMAL.

- ***-related\_power\_port***
- ***-related\_ground\_port***
- ***-related\_bias\_ports***

If any of these arguments is specified, an implicit supply set is created containing the supply nets connected to the ports. If the port being attributed is in mode, the implicitly created supply set is treated as the `-receiver_supply` set. If the port being attributed is out mode, the implicitly created supply set is treated as the `-driver_supply` set. If the port being attributed is inout mode, the implicitly created supply set is treated as both the `-receiver_supply` and `-driver_supply` set.

- ***-receiver\_supply***

If you use this argument and if the receiving logic is within the logic design starting at the design root, it shall be an error if its supply is not the receiver supply.

- ***-driver\_supply***

If you use this argument and if the driver logic is within the logic design starting at the design root, it shall be an error if its supply is not the driver supply.

## Command

[set\\_pin\\_related\\_supply](#)

This command provides the ability to define the related power and ground pins for signal pins on a library cell. This command conveys information similar to `related_power_pin` and `related_ground_pin` in Liberty, but it *may* override them. This command is restricted to only leaf-library cells and not synthesizable hierarchical modules.

## Attributes in RTL

You can define the following attributes in RTL to specify the power intent of hard macros:

- UPF\_related\_power\_pin
- UPF\_related\_ground\_pin

### System Verilog Example

```
(* UPF_related_power_pin = "my_Vdd" *) output my_Logic_Port;
```

### VHDL Example

```
attribute UPF_related_power_pin of my_Logic_Port : signal is "my_Vdd";  
(* UPF_related_power_pin = "my_Vdd" *) output my_Logic_Port;
```

## Liberty File

You can define the following attributes at the pins in a Liberty file:

- related\_power\_pin
- related\_ground\_pin

The related\_power\_pin and related\_ground\_pin attributes are defined at the pin level for output, input, and inout pins. These attributes associate a predefined power and ground pin with the corresponding signal pins under which they are defined. A default related\_power\_pin and related\_ground\_pin will always exist in any cell.

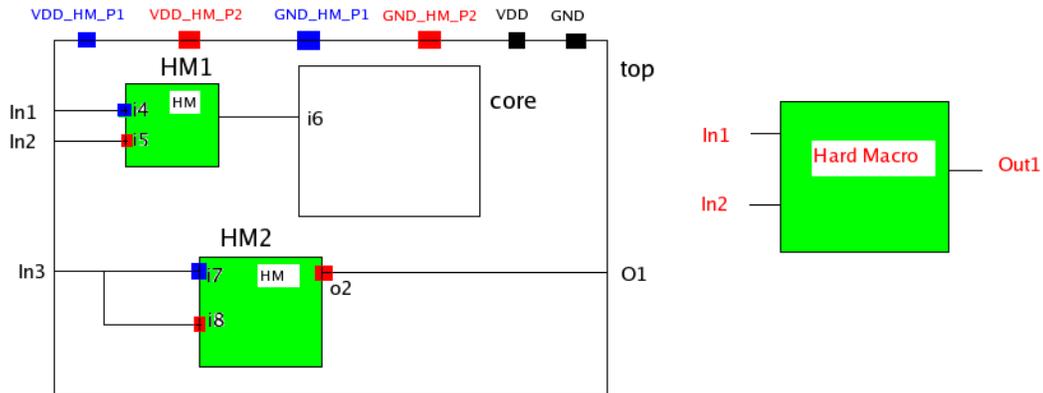
## Example of Power Intent on a Hard Macro

Figure A-3 shows an example of a block diagram of hard macro power domains, using the following top-level UPF definition:

```
set_scope top  
  
create_power_domain PD_top -include_scope  
  
create_power_domain PD_HM1 -elements { HM1 }  
  
set_domain_supply_net PD_top -primary_power_net VDD  
-primary_ground_net GND  
  
set_domain_supply_net PD_HM1 -primary_power_net VDD_HM_P1
```

```
-primary_ground_net GND_HM_P1
```

**Figure A-3. Design Consisting of Hard Macros**



The following sections show how to define the hard macro power intent for each method.

## UPF Commands

Constraints are specified on pins.

```
set_pin_related_supply HM1 -pins { i4 } -related_power_pin VDD_HM_P1
  -related_ground_pin GND_HM_P1

set_port_attributes -ports { HM2/i7 } -related_power_port VDD_HM_P1
  -related_ground_port GND_HM_P1

set_port_attributes -ports { HM2/i8 HM/o2 HM1/i5 } -related_power_port
  VDD_HM_P2 -related_ground_port GND_HM_P2
```

## RTL Attributes

For HM1 —

```
(* UPF_related_power_pin = "VDD_HM_p1", UPF_related_ground_pin =
  "GND_HM_p1" *) input in4;

(* UPF_related_power_pin = "VDD_HM_p2", UPF_related_ground_pin =
  "GND_HM_p2" *) input in5;
```

For HM2 —

```
(* UPF_related_power_pin = "VDD_HM_p1", UPF_related_ground_pin =  
  "GND_HM_p1" *) input in7;  
  
(* UPF_related_power_pin = "VDD_HM_p2", UPF_related_ground_pin =  
  "GND_HM_p2" *) input in8;  
  
(* UPF_related_power_pin = "VDD_HM_p2", UPF_related_ground_pin =  
  "GND_HM_p2" *) output o2;
```

## Liberty File Attributes

```
library (PALIB) {  
  cell (HM) {  
    pg_pin (VDD_HM_P1) {  
      pg_type : primary_power;  
      user_pg_type : "abc";  
      voltage_name : COREVDD1;  
    }  
  
    pg_pin (GND_HM_P1) {  
      pg_type : primary_ground;  
      voltage_name : COREGND1;  
    }  
  
    pg_pin (VDD_HM_P2) {  
      pg_type : backup_power;  
      user_pg_type : "abc";  
      voltage_name : COREVDD1;  
    }  
  
    pg_pin (GND_HM_P2) {  
      pg_type : backup_ground;  
      voltage_name : COREGND1;  
    }  
  
    pin(in1) {  
      direction : input;  
      related_ground_pin : GND_HM_P1;  
      related_power_pin : VDD_HM_P1;  
    }  
  
    pin(in2) {  
      direction : input;  
      related_ground_pin : GND_HM_P2;  
      related_power_pin : VDD_HM_P2;  
    }  
  
    pin(out1) {  
      direction : input;  
      related_ground_pin : GND_HM_P2;  
      related_power_pin : VDD_HM_P2;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

## Creating Feedthrough For RTL Conversion Functions

In RTL logic, a function call normally creates a driver in the design, to which Power Aware will attempt to apply the specified power intent. However, functions that are intended only to convert or assign data types should not be considered as part of the power intent—they do not require isolation, retention, or corruption.

You can create a Tcl file to identify such functions in your design so that they are excluded from your power intent. These are referred to as a “feedthrough” functions. In the Tcl file, you use the `set_feedthrough_object` command for each function you want to exclude.

### Example

```
set_feedthrough_object
  -function {function_list} \
  [-package package_name]
```

where

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <code>-function {function_list}</code> | is a list of function name. This is a mandatory option and at least one function name should be specified. |
| <code>-package package_name</code>     | is optional and if specified, will detect only functions from the specified package only.                  |

When you run Power Aware, use `vopt -pa_tclfile` to specify the name of this Tcl file.



# Appendix B

## Power Aware Checking Specifications

---

This chapter describes some of the details for Power Aware checking according to elements defined for a given power domain (such as level shifting, isolation, retention, and supplies).

### Level Shifter Checking

A level shifter cell is present in the design description if a `set_level_shifter` -instance command in your UPF file identifies that cell in the design description as a level shifter cell.

A level shifter cell is implied by a level shifting strategy if the `set_level_shifter` command exists with the appropriate options for the appropriate power domain.

Level shifting is statically required for a power domain crossing if the source and sink domains *can be* both powered on at the same time and the difference between the maximum voltages exceeds a certain threshold. Level shifting is dynamically required for a power domain crossing if the source and sink domains *are* both powered on at the same time and the difference between the maximum voltages exceeds a certain threshold.

The directionality of a level shifter must be `high_to_low` if the maximum voltage powering the source domain is higher than the maximum voltage powering the sink domain. The directionality of a level shifter must be `low_to_high` if the maximum voltage powering the source domain is lower than the maximum voltage powering the sink domain.

### Isolation Checking

An isolation cell is present in the design description if a `set_isolation` -instance command in your UPF file identifies that cell in the design description as an isolation cell.

An isolation cell is implied by an isolation strategy if a `set_isolation` command exists with the appropriate options for the appropriate power domain.

Isolation is statically required for a power domain crossing if the source domain *can be* off when the sink domain is on. Isolation is dynamically required for a power domain crossing if the source domain *is* off when the sink domain is on.

## Related Topics

[Chapter 5, Automatic Checking](#)

[Voltage Level-Shifting \(Multi-Voltage Analysis\)](#)

# Additional Information on Checking

Some checks are performed both statically (during UPF processing) and dynamically (during simulation). Other checks are performed either statically or dynamically, but not both.

Additional information messages are issued when a given isolation or level shifting cell in either of the following cases:

- It is confirmed to be valid
- It has not been analyzed due to insufficient data

An information message is also issued when an isolation or level shifting cell is not inserted at a given power domain crossing, when you have specified either of the following UPF commands and arguments

- `set_isolation -no_isolation`
- `set_level_shifter -no_shift`

[Table B-1](#) provides a summary of static and dynamic checks according to whether they apply to level shifting, isolation, retention, supplies, or registers. All checks are static unless otherwise indicated.

**Table B-1. Static and Dynamic Checks for Power Domain Characteristics**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description
Missing Level Shifter	<code>-pa_checks=sml</code> <code>-pa_checks=uml</code> (dynamic)	Checks that a level shifter is present or implied by a level shifting strategy for a power domain crossing where level shifting is required.
Redundant Level Shifter	<code>-pa_checks=srl</code>	Checks that no level shifter is present or implied by a level shifting strategy for a power domain crossing where level shifting is not required.

**Table B-1. Static and Dynamic Checks for Power Domain Characteristics**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description
Incorrect Level Shifter	-pa_checks=sil -pa_checks=uil (dynamic)	Checks that a level shifter that is present or implied by a level shifting strategy for a given power domain crossing has the appropriate directionality to correctly convert from the maximum voltage level powering the source domain to the maximum voltage level powering the sink domain.
Missing Isolation Cell	-pa_checks=smi -pa_checks=umi (dynamic)	Checks that an isolation cell is present or implied by an isolation strategy for a power domain crossing where isolation is required.
Redundant Isolation Cell	-pa_checks=sri	Checks that no isolation cell is present or implied by an isolation strategy for a power domain crossing where isolation is not required.
Incorrect Isolation Cell	-pa_checks=sii	Checks that you have not specified set_isolation -no_isolation for a power domain crossing for which isolation is required.
Isolation Enable Protocol	-pa_checks=iep (dynamic)	Checks that isolation is enabled at a power domain crossing when the source power domain driving that power domain crossing is powered down.
Isolation Disable Protocol	-pa_checks=idp (dynamic)	Checks that the source power domain is powered up when isolation is disabled for a power domain crossing driven by that source power domain.
Isolation Race Check	-pa_checks=irc (dynamic)	Flags any toggling of isolated port's value at assertion/de-assertion of isolation control signal.

**Table B-1. Static and Dynamic Checks for Power Domain Characteristics**

Check	Usage Syntax	Description
Isolation Functionality Check	-pa_checks=ifc (dynamic)	Ensures that when isolation is not applied, the value at isolation cell's output is same as that at its input.
Isolation Clamp Value Check	-pa_checks=icp (dynamic)	Ensures isolation cell is clamping to correct clamp value specified in UPF file.
Isolation Toggle Check	-pa_checks=it (dynamic)	Catches any change in isolated ports' value during isolation period.
Retention Enable Protocol	-pa_checks=rop (dynamic)	Checks that the retention enable signal is asserted when a power domain with retention is powered down.
Retention Enable/Disable Protocol	-pa_checks=rpo (dynamic)	Checks that transitions on the retention enable signal for a power domain with retention occur only when the power domain is powered up.
Latch Enable/Clock Level Protocol	-pa_checks=rsc (dynamic)	Checks that latch enable and clock signals have a specified value when retention is enabled for a power domain with retention.
Latch Enable/Clock Toggle Protocol	-pa_checks=rsa (dynamic)	Checks that latch enable or clock signals do not toggle while a power domain is powered down.
Primary Supply	-pa_checks=cp (dynamic)	Checks that the primary supply for a power domain is always well-defined (does not become corrupted).
Isolation and Retention Supply	-pa_checks=upc (dynamic)	Checks that isolation or retention supplies are on when isolation or retention, respectively, is enabled.

**Table B-1. Static and Dynamic Checks for Power Domain Characteristics**

<b>Check</b>	<b>Usage Syntax</b>	<b>Description</b>
Non-Retention Register Reset	-pa_checks=npu	Checks that non-retention registers are reset when the power domain containing them is powered up.
Glitch Detection	-pa_checks=ugc	Catches any spurious spikes on control lines so that it does not cause false switching of control ports of various control logic.



# Appendix C

## Model Construction for Power Aware Simulation

---

### Guidelines for Writing HDL Models

Power Aware verification uses Verilog behavioral models of Power Aware cells. These models encapsulate the Power Aware behaviors of various types of design state, such as clock-low retention flip-flops and active-high retention latches.

Verilog HDL constructs and attributes for Power Aware models provided by a silicon (or library) vendor. These models trigger relevant events for the simulator to modify the runtime behavior of the design. Typically, these modifications consist of corrupting states and output values and storing or restoring state values based on power control network activity.

Typically, your UPF power specification file relates inferred registers or latches to these models. However, it is possible to capture Power Aware functionality in combination with register and latch functionality in a single model. Because of this, you can create Power Aware models in Verilog to specify Power Aware behavior for inferred registers and latches, as well as provide the functionality directly through direct instantiation of the Power Aware models. Combining both of these functional descriptions in a single model facilitates the testing of the model for use in Power Aware verification.

### Assumptions and Advantages

- The silicon foundry is responsible for the specification of these models to match the behavior of their Power Aware cell technology.
- Capturing the Power Aware behavior in standard Verilog gives the vendor the flexibility to add new cell types and behaviors without creating additional simulation requirements for those cells.
- Foundries providing Power Aware models have control over the protection of their intellectual property (IP).

### Basic Model Structure

Model vendors can implement the Verilog model in any style. The cells communicate important events to the simulator using named events. Power Aware verification defines a standard set of

named event identifiers that are used in the model. Each named event corresponds to a particular action to be taken by the simulator.

The simulator communicates with the model by connecting the model to the clock, reset, power (on/off) and power retention signals. Through events on these signals, the model determines when the Power Aware events are triggered, notifying the simulator that the normal RTL behavior must be modified to reflect power control network activity. Because the only inputs are single bit inputs and the only "output" to the simulator is the triggering of named events, the models (at the RTL or higher abstraction level) are general purpose and can work with inferred registers and latches of any data type (for VHDL and SystemVerilog support).

The model communicates with the simulator only by triggering the defined named events. The simulator will then map the event trigger into the appropriate Power Aware behavior for the inferred register or latch that the Power Aware model is associated (using the Power Specification File).

The port interface to the Power Aware model can contain additional port declarations. For example, a Power Aware latch model might define **enable**, **data in** and **data out** ports. For the purpose of Power Aware RTL verification, these additional ports are ignored and will not be connected to the design's functional network.

As additional ports are permitted (but ignored), it is feasible to define a Power Aware model that can be verified as functionally correct as it can be instantiated into a test circuit and exercised to ensure it triggers the Power Aware events at the appropriate time and that saved and restored values match what is expected.

A benefit of this approach is that a single Power Aware model can be created for both gate-level verification and Power Aware RTL verification. The gate-level functionality can be used in gate level simulations and would include the cell's Power Aware functionality but not the triggering of the Power Aware events that are designed for use in RTL (or higher) abstraction level simulations. The Power Aware events can be used without the overhead of the gate-level functionality, for RTL and higher abstraction simulations. Together, both sets of functionality can be used to verify the correctness of the model. The example below shows the use of conditional compilation to control inclusion of functional code, the Power Aware code or both in a simulation.

Modeling using conditional compilation implies that the model would be compiled twice into different libraries for use in gate-level and RTL simulations. An alternative would be the use of parameters and conditional generates to control the inclusion of functionality. In any case, the ability to specify a single model for use at multiple abstraction levels simplifies the support and maintenance associated with the development and deployment of Power Aware IP models.

## Named Events in Power Aware

The following declarations of named events in a Power Aware Verilog model control simulator activity as indicated.

event pa\_store\_value

The simulator stores the current value of the inferred registers or latches that the Power Aware model is associated within the power specification file.

event pa\_store\_x

The simulator stores a corruption value for the inferred registers or latches. Corruption values depend on the type of data inferring the register or latch. A table mapping corruption values to data types is specified separately.

event pa\_restore\_value

The simulator restores the value previously saved for the inferred registers or latches to the corresponding signal(s) in the design. Restoration of a value results in an event on the corresponding signal to facilitate propagation of known, good states throughout a block that has had power restored.

event pa\_restore\_x

The simulator restores (re-initializes) the inferred registers or latches to an unknown state specified by the corruption value for the signal's data type. The simulator propagates an event on the restored corruption value.

event pa\_corrupt\_register; // corrupt the register

The simulator corrupts the current value of the signal corresponding to the inferred registers or latches. The corruption value used is determined by the data type/corruption value table specified separately. No event is propagated due to the corruption. NOTE: See [Usage Note for Sequence Requirements](#) (below).

event pa\_set\_register; // set the register

The simulator sets the current value of the signal corresponding to the inferred register or latch to a set value, which is inferred from the RTL code. The simulator propagates an event on the set signal value.

event pa\_reset\_register; // reset the register

The simulator sets the current value of the signal corresponding to the inferred register or latch to a reset value, which is inferred from the RTL code. The simulator propagates an event on the reset signal value.

event pa\_restore\_hold\_register

The simulator restores the value previously saved and holds that value until a pa\_release\_register event is raised. NOTE: See [Usage Note for Sequence Requirements](#) (below).

event pa\_release\_register

The simulator releases any forced values on a register. If the register is combinational, the simulator re-evaluates the register. NOTE: See [Usage Note for Sequence Requirements](#) (below).

```
event pa_release_reeval_register
```

The simulator re-evaluates a latch at powerup. Forces the register to be re-evaluated if the latch enable is active when power is restored.

```
event pa_iso_on
```

The simulator is notified that an isolation period has begun. Use `pa_release_register` event to identify the end of an isolation period.

The model is responsible for raising the named event when the model of the Power Aware cell is in the appropriate state.

For instance, when the retention signal goes high and the clock is in the proper state in a CLRFF (clock-low, retention flip-flop), the model should raise the `pa_store_value` event. When the power goes low, the `pa_corrupt_register` event should be raised.

## Usage Note for Sequence Requirements

When you use a `pa_restore_hold_register` or `pa_corrupt_register` event, you must include a corresponding `pa_release_register` or `pa_release_reeval_register` event in the model in the next sequence. The release event can be in a different always block (for example), but it must be next in the sequence.

## Attributes

To assist in the identification of Power Aware cells and facilitate their mapping inferred sequential elements, attributes are placed within the module to provide easily located information. The attributes names and allowed values, as well as contexts in which they are used, are as specified.

## Retention Cells and Memories

The attribute name is **is\_retention** and the allowed attribute values are the strings corresponding to the **pacell\_type** specified in the section [Power Model Mapping Statement](#).

```
(* is_retention = <pacell_type_string> *)
```

Where **pacell\_type\_string** is one of:

```
"FF_CKHI"  
"FF_CKLO"  
"FF_CKFR"  
"LA_ENHI"
```

```
"LA_ENLO"
"LA_ENFR"
"RETMEM_CKHI"
"RETMEM_CKLO"
"RETMEM_CKFR"
```

Note that within this context, the pacell types of ANY\_CKHI, ANY\_CKLO and ANY\_CKFR have no meaning as these types are used to map any inferred register or latch. Within the context of attributing a retention cell, that cell will be either a register or latch and that information will be known at the time of attribution.

## Example

```
(* is_retention = "FF_CKFR" *)           // Clock free register
(* is_retention = "RETMEM_CKHI" *)       // Retention memory sensitive
                                           //      on posedge of clock
```

## Isolation Cells

The behavior of isolation cells is automatically introduced at the RTL or higher levels through specification of output corruption. However, it is necessary to attribute the gate level library isolation cell models to ensure that the gate level design matches the verified and specified RTL (or higher) functionality. The **is\_isolation\_cell** attribute is Boolean.

## Example

```
(* is_isolation_cell *)                 // According to IEEE 1364, this
                                           // is equivalent to:
(* is_isolation_cell = 1 *)
```

## Level Shifters

Level shifters imply no functional behavior at RTL or higher. However, they are required to ensure proper operation and scaling of signal values from one voltage domain to another. The PCF contains voltage domain definitions, refer to the section [Voltage Domains](#). Attributing level shifter cells in the gate level library ensures the gate level design matches the verified and specified RTL (or higher) design specification. The **is\_level\_shifter** attribute is Boolean.

## Example

```
(* is_level_shifter *)                   // According to IEEE 1364, this
                                           // is equivalent to:
(* is_level_shifter = 1 *)
```

## Model Interface Ports

The model must define the necessary ports using the names as specified in this section. All ports are required even if the optional functionality does not apply to a specific inferred register or

latch. This port interface specification allows generic models that can be applied to a variety of inferred registers and latches.

All ports specified below are input ports. The simulator will connect the ports to the corresponding functional and power control network signals by name. Verilog is case sensitive.

- **PWR** — Power control network signal that indicates whether power is on or off for the power island that this model is associated with. This port is always connected.
- **Retention port(s)** — One of the following must be defined by the module and the retention port(s) will always be connected:
  - **RET** — Power control network signal that indicates whether or not the state of the inferred register or latch must be saved (or restored).
  - **SAVE, RESTORE** — Separate ports to signal save and restore separately.
- **CLK** — Functional network data in enable signal. For registers, this would be a clock signal. For latches, this will be the enable signal. This port will always be connected.
- **SET** — Functional network control signal indicating that the inferred sequential model's value should be set or preset. The functionality of this port is optional and the port will not be connected if there are no inferred set or preset conditions. This port needs to be modeled active high or active posedge. The tool infers the control signal and its polarity and will automatically negate the signal's value when it is connected to the model if it is active low or active negedge.
- **RESET** — Functional network control signal indicating that the inferred sequential model's value should be reset or clear. The functionality of this port is optional and the port will not be connected if there are no inferred reset or clear conditions. The tool infers the control signal and its polarity and will automatically negate the signal's value when it is connected to the model if it is active low or active negedge.

Power and retention ports may be connected to an expression involving two or more signals (each). For example, if power on is determined by a master power signal being on and a specific power island power signal being on, then you can use the following expression in the PCF as the input expression connected to the PWR port:

```
(global_pwr & local_pwr)
```

## Example—Register Model

The following Verilog code represents a behavioral model of a Clock Free Retention Flip Flop (CFRFF) modified to use many of the listed named events. The RTL verification event generation functionality is separated from the "gate-level" cell functionality to demonstrate how a single model can be defined for use at both RTL and gate levels for Power Aware verification as well as facilitate the verification of both functional aspects of the model.

```

module CFRFF (
    PWR, RET, CLK, SET, RESET
`ifdef PA_GLS_FUNC // Extra ports would be left unconnected
    , D, Q // It isn't necessary to conditionally
`endif // compile them out for RTL PA
) ;

    input PWR;
    input RET;
    input CLK;
    input SET; // Not used in this model
    input RESET;
`ifdef PA_GLS_FUNC
    input D;
    output Q;

    reg Q;

    reg reg_q;
    reg reg_q_ret;
    reg ret_value;
    reg restore_value;
    reg posedge_power_w_reset;
    reg negedge_ret_w_reset;
    reg reset_active;
`endif // PA_GLS_FUNC

    // MG event declarations
`ifdef PA_RTL_FUNC // Would not be needed in GLS
    event pa_store_value;
    event pa_store_x;
    event pa_restore_value;
    event pa_restore_x;
    event pa_corrupt_register;
    event pa_reset_register;
`endif // PA_RTL_FUNC

`ifdef PA_GLS_FUNC
// Functionality in this section is used only in Gate Level
// simulations or in the verification of the PA RTL functionality
// (triggering of the appropriate events at the appropriate time).

    initial
        begin
            Q = 0;
            ret_value = 0;
            restore_value = 0;
            posedge_power_w_reset = 0;
            negedge_ret_w_reset = 0;
            reset_active = 0;
        end

    always @ (PWR, RESET,
                RET, reg_q, ret_value,
                posedge_power_w_reset, negedge_ret_w_reset)
        begin : output_mux
            if (~PWR)
                begin

```

```
        Q <= 1'bx;
    end
else if (posedge_power_w_reset)
    Q <= reg_q;
else if (negedge_ret_w_reset)
    Q <= reg_q;
else if (RET)
    begin
        Q <= reg_q_ret;
    end
else
    Q <= reg_q;
end

always @( RESET)
    begin
        reset_active = RESET;
    end

always @(posedge CLK or negedge RESET)
    begin : ff_process
        if (RESET)
            reg_q <= 1'b0;
        else
            reg_q <= D;
        end
    end

always @(posedge CLK)
    begin : ret_ff_process
        if (~RET)
            reg_q_ret <= D;
        end
    end

always @(posedge RET)
    begin
        ret_value <= reg_q;
    end

always @(negedge RET)
    restore_value <= ret_value;

always @(negedge PWR)
    begin
        if (!RET)
            begin
                wait (PWR);
                if (~RESET) posedge_power_w_reset <= 1;
                wait (!CLK);
                wait (CLK);
                posedge_power_w_reset <= 0;
            end
        end
    end

`endif // PA_GLS_FUNC

`ifdef PA_RTL_FUNC
// Functionality in this section is used for Power Aware RTL (or higher)
```

```
// abstraction verification. It can also be combined with the gate
// level functionality for the purpose of verifying both.

always @(posedge RET)
    -> pa_store_value;

always @(negedge RET)
begin
    if ( (RESET) && PWR)
        -> pa_reset_register;
    end

always @(posedge PWR)
begin
    if (RET)
begin
    -> pa_restore_value;
    end
end

always @(negedge PWR)
    -> pa_corrupt_register;

`endif // PA_RTL_FUNC

endmodule
```

## Example—Corrupt Model

The following Verilog code shows how to create a simple corruption model that initiates and releases corruption on a register:

```
module CORRUPT(PWR);
    input PWR;
    event pa_corrupt_register;
    event pa_release_register;

    always @(negedge PWR)
        -> pa_corrupt_register;

    always @(posedge PWR)
        -> pa_release_register;

endmodule // corrupt
```

where

- The `pa_corrupt_register` statement causes the simulator to corrupt the current value of the signal corresponding to the inferred registers or latches.
- The `pa_release_register` statement causes the simulator to release any forced values on a register. If the register is combinational, the simulator re-evaluates the register.



# Appendix D

## UPF Commands and Reference

---

This appendix provides information on Unified Power Format (UPF), which is a standardized set of low-power design specifications for use throughout design, analysis, verification, and implementation.

- [Unified Power Format \(UPF\)](#)
- [UPF Standards](#)
- [Supported UPF Commands](#)
- [Supported UPF Package Functions](#)
- [Accessing Generate Blocks in UPF](#)
- [Supported UPF Attributes](#)
- [Supported UPF Extensions](#)
- [UPF Supply Connections](#)
- [Value Conversion Tables](#)
- [Supply Nets](#)

### Unified Power Format (UPF)

You apply UPF as a user-defined file that specifies the Power Aware characteristics of a design for use by the simulator. UPF file format adheres to v1.0 of the UPF standard by default. In addition, Mentor also supports portions of v2.0 (IEEE Std1801-2009). Mentor supports the use of the industry-wide standard known as Unified Power Format (UPF), which consists of commands and statements in a Tcl text file that define the low-power intent for a design.

A UPF file is designed to capture all Power Aware characteristics of the design at the RTL or gate level in a compact form that can be easily used by the simulator. The scope of the UPF file is to provide a standardized format for specifying the supply network, switches, power isolation, data retention, and other aspects relevant to power management of an electronic design.

The UPF file is the key to using Power Aware verification on your design. This file provides the following information required to overlay RTL or gate-level verification with the power control network and Power Aware functionality:

- Power regions, voltage domains, and power islands

- Retention sequential models, their type and the regions they are in
- State and output corruption behavior in power-down situations
- Power control signals and the portions of the design they control

## Using a UPF File as Part of Power Aware Simulation

The following procedure describes how to use a UPF file as part of basic Power Aware simulation (see [Standard Flow For RTL](#)).

1. Use a text editor to create a UPF file that contains commands that specify the Supply Network over your design. These commands are TCL functions, as described in the current UPF standard.
2. Specify this UPF file as part of the `vopt` command, using the `-pa_upf` switch, as follows:

```
vopt -o <opt_top> <Design Top> -pa_upf <upf_file>
```

**Result:** `vopt` creates a parallel hierarchy that contains the power supply network of the design. This hierarchy also triggers the control signals that are used to control corruption, retention, or isolation.

Also, Power Aware data is written to either the current working directory or to a library that you can specify using the `-pa_lib` switch.

3. If you are importing a UPF package into a Verilog test bench or file, and the `mtiUPF` variable is not defined in your `modelsim.ini` file, you must use the `vlog` command with the `-L` argument to compile the test bench, as follows:

```
vlog <filename> -L mtiUPF
```

Note that this variable is defined by default, so you generally do not have to do this.

Alternatively, if you want to use a UPF package with VHDL, you must include it in your VHDL file, as follows:

```
library IEEE;  
use IEEE.UPF.all;
```

## UPF Standards

At this time, two versions of the UPF standard have been published:

- [Version 1.0 of the UPF Standard](#)
- [Version 2.0 of the UPF Standard: IEEE Std 1801-2009](#)

Mentor currently supports v1.0 of the UPF standard by default. In addition, Mentor also supports portions of v2.0 (IEEE Std1801-2009), which you can implement in a given UPF file by inserting the following text as the first line:

```
upf_version 2.0
```

## Version 1.0 of the UPF Standard

The technological foundation for the UPF standard was originally developed by Accellera Organization, Inc.<sup>1</sup> UPF 1.0 was approved as an Accellera standard in February 2007. Version 1.0 of the standard was administered by the P1801 Low Power Working Group of the IEEE. For more information on this working group, refer to the following web location:

[http://www.accellera.org/activities/p1801\\_upf/](http://www.accellera.org/activities/p1801_upf/)

You can obtain a copy of v1.0 of the UPF standard (February 2007) in PDF format from the following web location:

[http://www.accellera.org/apps/group\\_public/download.php/989/upf.v1.0.pdf](http://www.accellera.org/apps/group_public/download.php/989/upf.v1.0.pdf)

By default, Mentor supports v1.0 of the UPF standard. In addition, Mentor also supports portions of v2.0 (IEEE Std1801-2009),

## Version 2.0 of the UPF Standard: IEEE Std 1801-2009

In May 2007, Accellera donated UPF v1.0 to the IEEE for the purposes of creating an IEEE standard. The donation was assigned to the P1801 working group and was eventually developed into a formal standard titled the *IEEE Standard for the Design and Verification of Low Power Integrated Circuits* (IEEE Std1801-2009). Although this standard is the first official IEEE version, it represents the second version of what is more informally referred to as UPF v2.0.

Currently, Mentor supports portions of IEEE Std1801-2009, which you can implement in a given UPF file by inserting the following text as the first line:

```
upf_version 2.0
```

---

### Note



By default, ModelSim uses UPF v1.0, unless you insert this `upf_version` command in the UPF file.

---

When you use v2.0, ModelSim parses all UPF v2.0 commands and displays a warning message for the following:

- Unsupported commands

---

1. <http://www.accellera.org>

- Any unsupported arguments for a supported command

## Supported UPF Commands

This section provides reference information on the UPF commands that you can use with ModelSim. These commands are listed in [Table D-1](#).

**Note**  Note that some commands in [Table D-1](#) have arguments that are not supported, and some commands or arguments are supported only if you implement the UPF file as v2.0.

---

[Table D-2](#) lists UPF commands that are not supported for the current release of ModelSim.

**Table D-1. Supported UPF Commands**

<a href="#">add_domain_elements</a>	<a href="#">create_pst</a>	<a href="#">set_design_top</a>
<a href="#">add_port_state</a>	<a href="#">create_supply_net</a>	<a href="#">set_domain_supply_net</a>
<a href="#">add_power_state</a>	<a href="#">create_supply_port</a>	<a href="#">set_isolation</a>
<a href="#">add_pst_state</a>	<a href="#">create_supply_set</a>	<a href="#">set_isolation_control</a>
<a href="#">associate_supply_set</a>	<a href="#">create_upf2hdl_vct</a>	<a href="#">set_level_shifter</a>
<a href="#">connect_logic_net</a>	<a href="#">load_simstate_behavior</a>	<a href="#">set_partial_on_translation</a>
<a href="#">connect_supply_net</a>	<a href="#">load_upf</a>	<a href="#">set_pin_related_supply</a>
<a href="#">connect_supply_set</a>	<a href="#">load_upf_protected</a>	<a href="#">set_port_attributes</a>
<a href="#">create_composite_domain</a>	<a href="#">map_isolation_cell</a>	<a href="#">set_power_switch</a>
<a href="#">create_hdl2upf_vct</a>	<a href="#">map_level_shifter_cell</a>	<a href="#">set_retention</a>
<a href="#">create_logic_net</a>	<a href="#">map_retention_cell</a>	<a href="#">set_retention_control</a>
<a href="#">create_logic_port</a>	<a href="#">name_format</a>	<a href="#">set_scope</a>
<a href="#">create_power_domain</a>	<a href="#">save_upf</a>	<a href="#">set_simstate_behavior</a>
<a href="#">create_power_switch</a>	<a href="#">set_design_attributes</a>	<a href="#">upf_version</a>

**Table D-2. UPF Commands Not Currently Supported**

<a href="#">bind_checker</a>	<a href="#">map_power_switch</a>	<a href="#">use_interface_cells</a>
<a href="#">describe_state_transition</a>	<a href="#">merge_power_domains</a>	

get_supply_net	set_retention_elements	
----------------	------------------------	--

## **add\_domain\_elements**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### **Arguments**

<b>Argument Name</b>	<b>Comments/Restrictions</b>
-elements	

### **Usage Notes**

This command adds design elements to the power domain.

---

## add\_port\_state

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-state	

### Usage Notes

Adds state information to a supply port, which can represent off-chip supply sources that are not driven by the test bench.

## **add\_power\_state**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

## Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-state	The name you specify here is simply an identifier; it has no semantic meaning.
-supply_expr	
-logic_expr	

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-simstate	<p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>CORRUPT</b>  The power level of the supply set is either off (one or more supply nets in the set are switched off, terminating the flow of current) or at such a low level that it cannot support switching and the retention of the state of logic nets cannot be guaranteed to be maintained even in the absence of changes or activity in the elements powered by the supply.</li> <li>• <b>CORRUPT_ON_ACTIVITY</b>  The power level of the supply set is insufficient to support activity. However, the power level is sufficient that logic nets retain their state as long as there is no activity within the elements connected to the supply.</li> <li>• <b>CORRUPT_STATE_ON_ACTIVITY</b>  The power level of the supply set is sufficient to support combinational logic, but it is not sufficient to support activity inside state elements, whether that activity would result in any state change or not.</li> <li>• <b>CORRUPT_STATE_ON_CHANGE</b>  The power level of the supply set is sufficient to support combinational logic, but it is not sufficient to support a change of state for state elements.</li> <li>• <b>NORMAL</b>  The power level of the supply set is sufficient to support full and complete operational (switching) capabilities with characterized timing.</li> <li>• <b>NOT_NORMAL</b>  This is a special, placeholder state. It allows early specification of a non-operational power state while deferring the detail of whether the supply set is in the <b>CORRUPT</b>, <b>CORRUPT_ON_ACTIVITY</b>, <b>CORRUPT_STATE_ON_CHANGE</b>, or <b>CORRUPT_STATE_ON_ACTIVITY</b> simstate. If the supply set matches a power state specified with simstate <b>NOT_NORMAL</b>, the semantics of <b>CORRUPT</b> shall be applied, unless overridden by a tool-specific option. <b>NOT_NORMAL</b> semantics shall never be interpreted as <b>NORMAL</b>.</li> </ul>
-legal   -illegal	
-update	

## Usage Notes

This command attributes one or more power states to a supply set or a power domain.

### Supply set

A supply set is a grouping of supply nets that collectively define a complete power supply. The power state of a supply set is specified in terms of the supply nets that constitute the set. It is the combined states of the constituent supply nets that determine the following:

- Whether there is current available to power an element.
- The voltage level of the supply. Simstates are associated with power states of supply sets.

Semantics for supply set simulation are applied to the elements connected to the supply set when you enable simstate behavior.

You can also reference supply sets in `add_power_state` as handles. Here, only those handles associated with some supply sets when `add_power_state` is invoked are valid.

---

### Note



It is an error when there are no supply nets associated with the handles and the handles are used in the expression

---

### Power domain

The power state of a domain is determined by the state of supply sets associated with the domain.

For example, the definition of a domain's `MY_DOMAIN_IS_ON` power state would logically require that the primary supply set be in a power state that is a `NORMAL` simstate (all supply nets of the primary supply set are on and the current delivered by the power circuit sufficient to support normal operation.)

Similarly, a `SLEEP` mode for the domain may require the primary supply set to be in power state whose simstate is not `NORMAL` (perhaps `CORRUPT`), while appropriate retention and isolation supplies are `NORMAL`.

You can define the power state for a domain directly in terms of supply nets using `-supply_expr` in addition to the `-logic_expr`.

- If a domain's power state `-logic_expr` specification includes comparison of another domain's active state to a power state defined on that domain, it is equivalent to including the `-logic_expr` and `-supply_expr` specifications for that power state of the referenced domain in the definition of the power state.
- If a domain's power state `-logic_expr` specification includes comparison of a supply set's active state to a power state defined on that supply set, it is equivalent to including the `-logic_expr` and `-supply_expr` specifications for that power state of the referenced supply set in the definition of the power state.

## add\_pst\_state

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-pst	
-state	

### Usage Notes

Allows specifying a power state table (PST) to define states on a supply net.

## associate\_supply\_set

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-handle	All predefined handles for supply set are supported.

### Usage Notes

Associates a supply set or supply\_set\_ref to a power domain, power switch, or strategy supply\_set\_handle.

## connect\_logic\_net

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-ports	

### Usage Notes

Connects a logic net to a logic port.

## connect\_supply\_net

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-ports	Y	Y	
-pg_type	Y	Y	Using an <element_list> is not supported.
-vct	Y	Y	
-pins	Y	Y	
-cells	Y	Y	
-domain	Y	Y	
-rail_connection	N	N	Not supported.

### Usage Notes

Refer to “[UPF Supply Connections](#)”

## connect\_supply\_set

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-connect	N	Y	
-elements	N	Y	
-exclude_elements	N	N	Not supported
-transitive	N	N	Not supported

### Usage Notes

Defines automatic connection semantics on supply sets. Supply nets of supply sets are automatically connected to the supply ports of design elements based on the purpose of the supply set in a given domain or strategy context and the function that a supply net performs in the context of supply set.

Restrictions:

- Supply sets specified in strategy context are not automatically connected to design elements.
- Supply nets in supply sets functioning as predefined supply set functions are not automatically connected according to their predefined function. You must specify explicit automatic connections.

### Examples

```
connect_supply_set PD.primary \  
  -connect {power primary_power} \  
  -elements TOP  
  
connect_supply_set PD.ISO.isolation_supply_set \  
  -connect {iso_power primary_power} \  
  -connect {iso_ground primary_ground} \  
  
connect_supply_set PD.RET.retention_supply_set \  
  -connect {ret_backup_power backup_power} \  
  -connect {switchtable_supply primary_power}
```

## create\_composite\_domain

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-subdomains	
-supply	
-update	

### Usage Notes

A composite power domain is a set of domains (referred to as subdomains), each of which has a primary supply set as necessary common property.

A composite domain contains these attributes:

- primary supply set handles
- power states

### Operations on a supply set

UPF v2.0 states that all operations performed on a composite domain are transitively applied to each subdomain. This implies that many UPF commands may refer to a composite domain, either directly using the `-domain(s)` argument or by using a handle name, in case of supply sets.

UPF commands applied on a composite domain are applied only to those domains that are present at that time in the subdomain tree of that composite domain—they will not be applied to the subdomains added later.

### Implementation

- Checks
  - If a composite domain with the given `composite_domain_name` exists in the current scope, you must specify the `-update` argument, or it will be flagged as an error. Similarly, if the composite domain is new and does not exist in the current scope, it will be an error to use the `-update` argument.

- Subdomains
  - For each subdomain provided in the -subdomain list, it will be an error if any of given rooted name does not match a power domain or composite domain in the current scope.
  - A domain can be a subdomain to multiple composite domains. However, this may lead to conflicting commands being applied on that domain (UPF v2.0 is not clear on this).
- Supply sets
  - Each supply set handle name provided with the -supply argument is searched for in the existing supply sets list for that composite domain. If found, the presence of supply set reference is checked for that handle.
  - A warning message is displayed if the reference is present but its name does not match the current the supply set reference name.
  - If the supply set handle did not contain a reference before, but now a reference name has been provided, ModelSim searches the current scope and updates the handle with this reference. It will be an error if any matching reference is not found.
  - If the supply set handle does not exist, ModelSim creates a new handle and populates the reference. ModelSim adds the new handle to the list of supply sets for the current composite domain and adds it to each subdomain.
  - You can add new subdomains and supply set handles to a composite domain subject to the checks mentioned above.
- Power states
  - The add\_power\_state command is supported, which means power states for composite domains are available.
- Support for save\_upf command
  - In the interpreted mode, Power Aware dumps instances of the create\_composite\_domain command once for each composite domain with all the updates included.
  - All the commands applied on a composite domain are applied to all the subdomains down to the leaf-level power domains. Because a composite domain can contain only subdomains, supply sets, and power states, ModelSim does not store strategies, nets, or other objects on it. As a result, these commands appear as multiple commands applied to each power domain that was a part of the subdomain hierarchy of a composite domain.
  - In uninterpreted mode, ModelSim saves the command texts as-is, and the create\_composite\_domain command may appear multiple times with -update. Also, the commands applied on a composite domain are directly dumped.

**Interaction of composite domains with other UPF commands**

- `add_power_state`
  
- `associate_supply_set`

In Section 6.15 of UPF v2.0:

It is valid to refer to the primary supply of a composite domain because there is exactly one primary supply common to all subdomains. It is not valid to refer to other `supply_set_handles` or strategies in the composite domain because they are not necessarily common to all sub domains.

This statement asserts that you cannot refer to a supply set handle in a composite domain other than primary supply set. Currently, the `associate_supply_set` command is supported only for the primary supply. For other supplies, you can associate them by using either of the following ways:

- `associate_supply_set` on each sub power domain individually
- using `create_composite_domain -update -supply {supply_set_handle [supply_set_ref]}`

It will be an error if the primary supply handle already exists in a subdomain and points to a different supply set.

Correct usage example:

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd2 pd3} -supply {primary}
associate_supply_set pd_ss -handle cd.primary
```

Alternate correct usage example:

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd2 pd3}
create_composite_domain cd -supply {ssh pd_ss}
```

Incorrect usage example

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd2 pd3} -supply {ssh}
associate_supply_set pd_ss -handle cd.ssh
```

Error message:

```
** Error: ./test.upf(88): UPF: (vopt-9765) It is invalid to use the
'associate_supply_set' command with any composite domain supply set handle
other than the primary handle.
Domain: 'cd', supply set handle: 'pd_ss'
```

- `create_power_switch`

The power switch will be created in the creation scope of `composite_domain`.

- `create_supply_net`

The supply net will be created in the creation scope of `composite_domain`. The command will also be applied with a `-reuse` argument to each subdomain. If the subdomain belongs to a different creation scope, the command will be applied without reuse.

- `create_supply_port`

The supply port will be created in the creation scope of `composite_domain`.

- `map_isolation_cell`

Not supported.

- `map_level_shifter_cell`

Not supported.

- `map_power_switch`

Not supported.

- `map_retention_cell`

Not supported.

- `set_isolation`

This command will be transitively applied to all the subdomains of a composite domain.

The following are also in effect:

- `set_isolation -domain composite_domain` cannot have `-elements/-exclude_elements/-instance` argument. This may cause conflict in the subdomains.
- The elements can be individually updated for each strategy in all the sub power domains.
- If any error occurred while transitively applying this command, it will not be applied to that subdomain.
- If a strategy has already been applied on a subdomain, trying to set a strategy of that same name directly on that subdomain without `-update` will be an error.

**Correct usage example:**

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd2 pd3} -supply {primary
pdsusb_ss}
set_isolation cd_iso1 -domain cd -clamp_value 0 -applies_to inputs -
isolation_signal iso -isolation_sense high -location parent
set_isolation cd_iso2 -domain cd -clamp_value 0 -applies_to outputs -
isolation_signal iso -isolation_sense high -location parent
```

**Alternate correct usage:**

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd2 pd3} -supply {primary
pdsusb_ss}
set_isolation cd_iso -domain cd -update -clamp_value 0 -applies_to outputs
-isolation_signal iso -isolation_sense high -location parent
set_isolation cd_iso -domain pd2 -update -elements
{hier_inst/leaf_inst2/localout_leaf}
set_isolation cd_iso -domain pd3 -update -elements
{hier_inst/leaf_inst3/localout_leaf}
```

**Incorrect usage example:**

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd2 pd3} -supply {primary
pdsusb_ss}
set_isolation cd_iso -domain cd -update -clamp_value 0 -applies_to outputs
-isolation_signal iso -isolation_sense high -location parent -elements
{hier_inst/leaf_inst3/scanout_leaf hier_inst/leaf_inst3/localout_leaf}
```

**Error message:**

```
** Error: ./test.upf(90): UPF: (vopt-PA-9809) The isolation strategy
'cd_ret' is defined on the composite domain 'cd'.
Specifying elements or instances on this strategy is invalid. Please
specify the member elements/instances on the subpower domains' strategies
by using the -update argument.
```

**Help message:**

```
power-aware Message # 9809:
A composite domain cannot contain design objects as elements/members. So a
UPF command applied to a composite domain cannot cannot directly refer to
design objects in its elements/instances list. These elements/instances
should be populated individually for each sub power domain using the
strategy/command with -update argument, after applying the
strategy/command on the composite domain.
```

- `set_isolation_control`

This command will be applied to all the subdomains of a composite domain.

- `set_level_shifter`

This command will be applied to all the subdomains of a composite domain.

The following arguments are not supported (they can also refer to `composite_domain`):

- `-source domain_name`
- `-sink domain_name:`

The following are also in effect:

- `set_level_shifter -domain composite_domain` cannot use the `-elements`, `-exclude_elements`, or `-instance` arguments. This may cause conflict in the subdomains.
- The elements can be individually updated for each strategy in all the sub-power domains.
- If any error occurred in transitively applying this command on a subdomain, it will not be applied to that subdomain. Usage and error messages for incorrectly specifying `-elements` or `-instance` arguments are similar to those for `set_isolation`.

- `set_port_attributes`

If a composite domain is included in the `-domains` argument of this command, it will be replaced by its sub-power domains, listed transitively.

Example:

```
create_composite_domain cd -subdomains {pd1 pd2 pd3} -supply {primary
pdsusb_ss}
set_port_attributes {-domains {cd} -applies_to inputs} -attribute pin_type
data_in
```

This is equivalent to:

```
set_port_attributes {-domains {pd1 pd2 pd3} -applies_to inputs} -attribute
pin_type data_in
```

- `set_retention`

This command will be applied to all the subdomains of a composite domain.

The following shall also apply:

- `set_isolation -domain composite_domain` cannot have `-elements`, or `-exclude_elements`, or `-instance` arguments. This may cause conflict in the subdomains.
- The elements can be individually updated for each strategy in all the sub-power domains.
- If any error occurred in transitively applying this command on a subdomain, it will not be applied to that subdomain.

The usage and error messages for incorrectly specifying -elements are -instance arguments are similar to set\_isolation.

- set\_retention\_control

This command will be applied to all the subdomains of a composite domain..

- use\_interface\_cell

Not supported.

## create\_hdl2upf\_vct

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-hdl_type	User-defined types not supported.
-table	

### Usage Notes

Defines a value conversion table (VCT) from an HDL logic type to the net\_state\_type of the supply net value when that value is propagated from HDL port to a UPF supply net.

## create\_logic\_net

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
<net_name>	The name of a logic net that you want to create in the active scope.

### Usage Notes

Results in the created net reflecting the same value as a port that you connect to it using the `connect_logic_net` command (`net_dut` and `pmb_out` in the example below).

This net can be used as a control signal.

The following are not supported:

- Logic nets with the same name but different creation scope
- Dumping of logic nets with `save_upf` command
- Implicit port/net semantics for logic ports/nets

### Example

```
set_scope /tb
create_logic_net net_tb
set_scope /tb/pmb

#connect the logic net to an output port on the
#power management block

connect_logic_net net_tb -ports pmb_out
set_scope /tb/dut
create_logic_port p_dut
create_logic_net net_dut
connect_logic_net net_dut -ports p_dut
set_scope
connect_logic_net net_tb -ports dut/p_dut
```

## create\_logic\_port

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-direction	

### Usage Notes

The following are not supported:

- Implicit port/net semantics for logic ports/nets
- Application of isolation strategies on logic ports

## create\_power\_domain

### Support for UPF Standard

- v1.0 — yes (partial)
- v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-simulation_only	N	Y	
-elements	Y	Y	See “Usage Notes” below.
-include_scope	Y	Y	
-supply	N	Y	
-scope	Y	Y	
-define_func_type	N	Y	
-update	N	Y	Allows adding elements and supplies to a previously created power domain for a progressive refinement of power intent.
-exclude_elements	N	N	Not supported.

### Usage Notes

For the -elements argument:

- You can specify a hierarchical path within the active scope in the list of design elements.
- You can specify bit- or part-selects of one or more signals. However, complex data types of SystemVerilog, such as structs, are not supported.
- According to UPF, only hierarchical path of instances can be accepted inside -elements { element\_list }. This has been extended under the above mentioned switch to allow generate hierarchy to be specified in the extent of a power domain. This feature is only available for corruption and retention and not for isolation and level shifting. This implies that if a generate block is added in the extent of a power domain, it will only show corruption and if it contains a retention register, retention behavior as well. However, there will not be any level shifters/isolation cells placed at the generate boundary.

```
create_power_domain PD_forgen -elements { forgen[1] }
```

### Examples

- Results in an effective element list of {top1 top2}.

```
create_power_domain PD1 -elements {sig[2] sig1[2:1]}
```

```
create_power_domain PD -elements {top1}  
create_power_domain PD -elements {top2} -update
```

- Defines automatic connection semantics on supply sets. Supply nets of supply sets are automatically connected to the supply ports of design elements based on the purpose of the supply set in a given domain or strategy context and the function that a supply net performs in the context of supply set.

```
create_power_domain PD -elements {top1}  
create_power_domain PD -elements {top2} -update
```

## create\_power\_switch

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	Y	Y	
-output_supply_port	Y	Y	
-input_supply_port	Y	Y	
-control_port	Y	Y	
-on_state	Y	Y	
-off_state	Y	Y	
-supply_set	N	Y	When the supply set simstate is anything other than NORMAL, the state of the output supply port of a switch is OFF and the acknowledge ports are corrupted. Note that this differs from UPF v2.0, which states that the state of the output supply port of a switch is UNDETERMINED.
-on_partial_state	Y	Y	
-ack_port	Y	Y	
-ack_delay	Y	Y	
-error_state	Y	Y	

### Usage Notes

The following is not supported:

- In order to model the definition of a power switch, ModelSim currently treats UNDETERMINED state as OFF state for simulation. This implies that when the state of supply set is NOT\_NORMAL, the state on the output supply port will be OFF instead of UNDETERMINED state.

## **create\_pst**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### **Arguments**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>Comments/Restrictions</b>
-supplies	

### **Usage Notes**

Creates a power state table (PST).

## create\_supply\_net

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	
-reuse	
-resolve	The value of parallel is implemented differently for v1.0 and v2.0. See “Usage Notes” below.

### Usage Notes

UPF v1.0 implemented a slight error in the semantic specification for UPF command `create_supply_net -resolve parallel`, which has been corrected in UPF v2.0.

ModelSim follows the UPF v2.0 specification in this case, since it is the later standard and its definition reflects what was intended to be the semantics for UPF v1.0.

Specifically, if multiple switches drive a supply net with parallel resolution, and the state of at least one (but not all) switch outputs is fully ON, and the remaining switch outputs are OFF, then:

- UPF v1.0 says the state of the driven supply net should be fully ON.
- UPF v2.0 says the state of the driven supply net should be partially ON.

Therefore, in following the UPF v2.0 specification, the state of the driven supply net will be partially ON.

## **create\_supply\_port**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### **Arguments**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>Comments/Restrictions</b>
-direction	The value of inout is not supported.
-domain	

## create\_supply\_set

### Support for UPF Standard

- v1.0 — no
- v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-function	
-reference_gnd	
-update	

## create\_upf2hdl\_vct

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-hdl_type	User-defined types not supported.
-table	

### Usage Notes

Defines a value conversion table (VCT) for the two LSBs of the supply\_state\_type.state value when that value is propagated from a UPF supply net into a logic port defined in an HDL.

## load\_simstate\_behavior

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
<library_name>	Name of a ModelSim library (Required)
-file	Name of a file containing set_simstate_behavior commands.

### Usage Notes

The load\_simstate\_behavior command loads a UPF file containing the defaults of simstate behavior for a library. This file consists solely of [set\\_simstate\\_behavior](#) commands, which are applied to the models in the library specified by the library\_name argument.

You can load only one file per occurrence of this command.

### Examples

#### Example D-1. Load Files With load\_simstate\_behavior Commands

The following example shows how to use the load\_simstate\_behavior command to load simstate semantics for lib1 and lib2.

```
main.upf
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
...
load_simstate_behavior lib1 -file load1.upf
load_simstate_behavior lib2 -file load2.upf
...
create_power_domain pd1
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -elements {mid1/bot1}
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
...
```

where

load1.upf consists of

```
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model mid
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -model bot
```

load2.upf consists of

```
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model top
```

### **Example D-2. Error/Warning Conditions: Unknown Library Name**

It is an error if the specified library cannot be resolved.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
...
load_simstate_behavior lib1 -file simstate_file1.upf
...
```

#### **Vopt Message**

```
** Error: test.upf(6): UPF: (vopt-9753) Library 'lib1' does not exist.
```

### **Example D-3. Error/Warning Conditions: Library File Does Not Exist**

It is an error if specified file does not exist.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
...
load_simstate_behavior lib1 -file sim.upf
...
```

#### **Vopt Message**

```
** Error: test.upf(6): UPF: (vopt-9718) Can't open file 'sim.upf'
```

### **Example D-4. Error/Warning Conditions: Model Cannot Be Found**

It is an error if a model specified in file cannot be found.

```
main.upf
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
...
load_simstate_behavior lib1 -file sim.upf
...

sim.upf
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model mad
```

#### **Vopt Message**

```
** Error: sim.upf(1): UPF: (vopt-9655) Model: 'mad' doesn't exist in
library: 'lib1'.
```

**Example D-5. Error/Warning Conditions: File Contains Wrong Commands**

It is an error if the specified file contains UPF commands other than `set_simstate_behavior`.

```
main.upf
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
...
load_simstate_behavior lib1 -file sim.upf
...

sim.upf
set_scope mid1
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model mid
```

**Vopt Message**

```
** Error: sim.upf(1): UPF: (vopt-9754) Command 'set_scope' not allowed in
file specified via command 'load_simstate_behavior'.
```

## load\_upf

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-scope	
-version	

---

## load\_upf\_protected

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-hide_globals	
-params	
-scope	
-version	

### Usage Notes

This command loads a UPF file in a protected environment that prevents corruption of existing variables.

## map\_isolation\_cell

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
<filename>	Text file that defines isolation strategy and power domain.
-domain	
-elements	This argument takes the list of ports on which user-defined isolation cell is to be placed. If no list specified, then user-defined cells are applied to all the elements belonging to the specified isolation strategy.
-lib_cells	
-lib_cell_type	
-lib_model_name	Specifies the name of the cell/module to be picked up for isolation. This module must be present in a library visible to the Power Aware vopt command.
-port	Provides information about the ports of the library cell. This argument connects the specified net_ref to a port of the model (see Usage Notes, below).

### Usage Notes

This command maps a particular isolation strategy to a library cell or range of library cells to be inserted for isolation. It has an effect only if isolation cells have been inserted (see [set\\_isolation](#)).

The information about the ports of the library model is specified using '-port' argument, which connects the specified net\_ref to a port of the model.

A net\_ref may be one of the following::

- A logic net name
- A supply net name

- One of the following symbolic references:
  - UPF\_ISO\_ENABLE (Specific to ModelSim)  
Refers to the isolation control signal of associated isolation strategy.
  - UPF\_ISO\_PWR (Specific to ModelSim)  
Refers to the isolation power net of associated isolation strategy.
  - UPF\_ISO\_GND (Specific to ModelSim)  
Refers to the isolation ground net of associated isolation strategy.
  - UPF\_GENERIC\_DATA  
Refers to the port on which the cell is to be placed.
  - UPF\_GENERIC\_OUTPUT  
Refers to the output of the isolation cell.
  - isolation\_signal  
Refers to the isolation control signal of associated isolation strategy.
  - isolation\_signal[index]  
Not supported.
  - isolation\_supply\_set.function\_name  
The function\_name extension refers to the supply net corresponding to the function it provides to the isolation\_supply\_set.
  - isolation\_supply\_set[index].function\_name  
Not supported.

### **Example D-6. Specifying Argument Values for map\_isolation\_cell**

```
...
set_isolation ISO_GEN \
-domain C0 \
-isolation_power_net PDO_VNET_ISO_OUT \
-clamp_value 1 \
-applies_to outputs

set_isolation_control ISO_GEN \
-domain C0 \
-isolation_signal /tb/iso \
-isolation_sense low \
-location parent
```

```
map_isolation_cell ISO_GEN \  
-domain C0 \  
-elements {mid_inst/out1} \  
-lib_model_name iso_cell_0_vh \  
-port "iso UPF_ISO_ENABLE"  
  
map_isolation_cell ISO_GEN \  
-domain C0 \  
-elements {mid_inst/out1} \  
-lib_model_name iso_cell_0_vh \  
-port "iso !tb_iso"  
-port "cell_in UPF_GENERIC_DATA"  
-port "cell_out UPF_GENERIC_OUTPUT"
```

---

## map\_level\_shifter\_cell

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
<filename>	Text file that defines level shifter strategy.
-domain	
-lib_cells	
-elements	A list of ports to use from the strategy defined in the <textfile> provided with this command.

## map\_retention\_cell

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	N	Y	
-elements	N	N	Not supported.
-exclude_elements	N	N	
-lib_cells	N	N	Not supported.
-lib_cell_type	N	Y	
-lib_model_name	N	Y	The name of the library cell or behavioral model and port connectivity for this strategy.

## name\_format

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-isolation_prefix	N	Y	
-isolation_suffix	N	Y	
-level_shift_prefix	N	Y	
-level_shift_suffix	N	Y	
-implicit_supply_suffix	N	N	Not supported.
-implicit_logic_prefix	N	N	Not supported.
-implicit_logic_suffix	N	N	Not supported.

## save\_upf

### Support for UPF Standard

- v1.0 — yes (partial)
- v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-scope			See Usage Notes, below
-version			Currently, -version is supported only when its value is the same as input file version.
-u	N	Y	Uninterpreted mode only, not part of UPF standard

### Usage Notes

ModelSim supports two modes for using the save\_upf command: interpreted and uninterpreted.

- Interpreted mode (default)

In interpreted mode, any command or argument that is not supported by Questa is written as a comment at the end of the saved UPF file. This file contains supported commands as interpreted by Questa, which are written after performing various operations such as semantic checks, resolving net-port connections, and resolving design objects related to a command.

Note that save\_upf dumps the complete power intent of the scope, not just the UPF commands in effect at the point where save\_upf command is given.

- Uninterpreted mode

In uninterpreted mode, all the UPF commands are saved in the output file without any processing (even if the commands are not supported by ModelSim). This mode filters out any TCL-specific constructs in the UPF and writes only the UPF commands to the output UPF file.

To write the output file in uninterpreted mode, do either of the following:

- Specify save\_upf -u. Note that in uninterpreted mode, the -scope and -version arguments of the save\_upf command are not supported. Also, the saved UPF file is a complete replica of the original UPF file (but without any TCL constructs).

Because the -u argument is not part of the UPF standard, you can provide it in a separate UPF file by using vopt -pa\_tclfile.

- Specify vopt -pa\_dumpupf <filename>. This saves the UPF file in uninterpreted mode to the <filename> file.

## set\_design\_attributes

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-elements	N	Y	
-models	N	Y	
-attribute	N	Y	Refer to <a href="#">Table D-5</a> for a list of UPF attributes supported for this argument.
-exclude_elements	N	N	Not supported.

## **set\_design\_top**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### **Arguments**

none

## set\_domain\_supply\_net

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-primary_power_net	
-primary_ground_net	

## **set\_isolation**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes (partial)

**Arguments**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>v1.0</b>	<b>v2.0</b>	<b>Comments/Restrictions</b>
-domain	Y	Y	
-elements	Y	Y	Complex data types of SystemVerilog, such as structs, are not supported. However, you can specify bit- or part-selects of one or more signals.  Example: set_isolation ISO1 -domain PD1 -elements {out1[2] out2[2:1]}
-applies_to	Y	Y	
-isolation_power_net	Y	Y	
-isolation_ground_net	Y	Y	
-no_isolation	Y	Y	
-isolation_supply_set	Y	Y	Supports only a single value (no list)—multiple clamp values, supplies, and enable isolation strategies are not supported.
-name_prefix	Y	Y	
-name_suffix	Y	Y	
-clamp_value	Y	Y	Specifying a user-defined value for <latch> is not supported.
-location	Y	Y	Supports only the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• self</li><li>• parent</li><li>• fanin</li><li>• fanout</li><li>• faninout</li></ul>

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-instance	N	Y	<p>Recognizes the special attributes present on the specified instance, applies the appropriate simulation semantics, and makes the connections as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If there is a port of type pg_type present on the instance, then ModelSim automatically connects the appropriate power and ground pins of the respective strategy and disable the implicit corruption semantics.</li> <li>• If there is no port of type pg_type present on the instance, then ModelSim applies implicit corruption semantics according to the primary_power and ground nets specified for the strategy.</li> </ul>
-update	N	Y	Allows adding elements and supplies to a previously created power domain.
-applies_to_clamp	Y	Y	
-applies_to_sink_off_clamp	Y	Y	
-applies_to_source_off_clamp	Y	Y	
-diff_supply_only	N	Y	No isolation is introduced into the path from the driver to the receiver for an isolation strategy defined on a port on the interface of ref_domain_name, where the driver is powered by the same supply as a receiver of the port.
-force_isolation	N	Y	
-isolation_signal	Y	Y	
-isolation_sense	Y	Y	
-source	N	Y	Filters the ports receiving a net that is driven by logic powered by the supply set.
-sink	N	Y	Filters the ports driving a net that fans out to logic powered by the supply set.
-sink_off_clamp	N	N	Not supported.
-source_off_clamp	N	N	Not supported.
-transitive	N	N	Not supported.

## Usage Notes

The isolation strategy defined by `set_isolation` causes Power Aware to perform insertion of isolation cells, together with an analysis of the power state table to see whether adjacent power domains can be in different power states and therefore require isolation.

The `-instance` argument prevents insertion of a redundant isolation cell at a port where one already exists (see [map\\_isolation\\_cell](#)).

When both `-source` and `-sink` are specified, a port is included if it has a source as specified and a sink as specified.

This command supports isolation of lower boundary ports of a power domain, which is defined in UPF v2.0 as “The highconn side of ports defined on design elements in other power domains, but instanced within design elements in the extent of the domain.”

```
set_scope /tb
create_power_domain PD_TOP ?elements {top_inst}
create_power_domain PD_BOT ?elements {top_inst/bot_inst}
...
set_isolation PD_TOP_isolation1 -domain PD_TOP \
-isolation_power_net VDD_PD_TOP_net -clamp_value 0 \
-applies_to inputs \
-location parent
```

This command will isolate both the inputs ports of the instance `/tb/top_inst`, as well as outputs of the instance `/tb/top_inst/bot_inst` (lower boundary ports) .

## set\_isolation\_control

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	
-isolation_signal	
-isolation_sense	
-location	The sibling value is not supported.

### Usage Notes

The -location argument defines the isolation behavior so that it appears in the specified location, which is used by synthesis and/or place-and-route to guide insertion of actual isolation cells.

## **set\_level\_shifter**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes (partial)

## Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	Y	Y	
-elements	Y	Y	Complex data types of SystemVerilog, such as structs, are not supported. However, you can specify bit- or part-selects of one or more signals.
-no_shift	Y	Y	
-threshold	Y	Y	
-applies_to	Y	Y	
-rule	Y	Y	
-location	Y	Y	<p>The -location argument defines where level shifter cells are to be placed in the design.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you specify a value of fanout, a level shifter will be identified for placement at all fanout locations (for valid level shifters) and the count is incremented accordingly in the report.</li> <li>• If you specify self, parent, sibling, or automatic, then only one level shifter will be identified for placement at a fanout location. Thus, the report may show a count of level shifters in some paths to be 0.</li> </ul> <p>Supports only the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• self</li> <li>• parent</li> <li>• fanin</li> <li>• fanout</li> <li>• faninout</li> </ul> <p>Example:</p> <pre>set_level_shifter LS1 -domain pd1 - elements {out3} out4[2:1]}</pre>
-instance	N	Y	Recognizes the special attributes present on the specified instance, applies the appropriate simulation semantics, currently disables the Power Aware simstate semantics.
-update	N	Y	Allows adding elements and supplies to a previously created power domain for a progressive refinement of power intent.

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-force_shift	N	Y	
-input_supply_set	N	N	Not supported.
-output_supply_set	N	N	Not supported.
-internal_supply_set	N	N	Not supported.
-name_prefix	Y	Y	
-name_suffix	Y	Y	
-source	N	Y	Selects the ports receiving a net that is driven from a port on the interface of the specified domain. See <a href="#">Usage Notes</a> , below.
-sink	N	Y	Selects the ports driving a net that fans out to a port on the interface of the specified domain. See <a href="#">Usage Notes</a> , below.
-transitive	N	N	Not supported.

## Usage Notes

When -source and -sink are specified, a port is included if it has a source as specified or a sink as specified.

For a selected output port on the interface of a domain for which this strategy is specified, level-shifting is performed only on the subset of the fanout that drives an element in the domain specified by the -sink option.

For a selected input port on the interface of a domain for which this strategy is specified, level-shifting is performed only on the subset of the fanin driven by an element in the domain specified by the -source option.

## set\_partial\_on\_translation

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
OFF   FULL_ON	OFF defines a default translation from PARTIAL_ON to OFF when evaluating the power state of supply sets and power domains (default).  FULL_ON defines a default translation from PARTIAL_ON to FULL_ON when evaluating the power state of supply sets and power domains.
-full_on_tools	Defines a list of tools (products) for which translation of PARTIAL_ON to FULL_ON take place.
-off_tools	Defines a list of tools for which translation of PARTIAL_ON to OFF take place.

### Usage Notes

The set\_partial\_on\_translation command defines the translation of PARTIAL\_ON to FULL\_ON or OFF for purposes of evaluating the power state of supply sets and power domains. The state of a supply set is evaluated after the tool-specific translation of PARTIAL\_ON to FULL\_ON or OFF for each supply net in the set.

By default Power Aware translates PARTIAL\_ON is translated to OFF. Therefore, you must use the set\_partial\_on\_translation command to change the default translation behavior to FULL\_ON.

You can also define a list of tools for which translation of PARTIAL\_ON to FULL\_ON takes place and the tools for which PARTIAL\_ON to OFF takes place. All tool names are case-insensitive

You can also specify default behavior for an unlisted tool.

---

#### Note



To define PARTIAL\_ON translation behavior for ModelSim, specify 'questa' in the tools list. In ModelSim, PARTIAL\_ON has an enum value of 2. The supply\_partial\_on function would also assign the same enum value of 2.

---

**Example D-7. Set the Translation of PARTIAL\_ON to FULL\_ON For All Tools**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb
...
set_partial_on_translation FULL_ON
...
```

**Example D-8. Set the translation of PARTIAL\_ON to FULL\_ON Only for ModelSim and to OFF for Others**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb
...
set_partial_on_translation OFF -full_on_tools questa
...
```

**Example D-9. Set the translation of PARTIAL\_ON to OFF Only for ModelSim and to FULL\_ON for Others**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb
...
set_partial_on_translation FULL_ON -off_tools questa
...
```

**Example D-10. Error/Warning Conditions: Same String in Different Lists**

It is an error if the same string for a tool name occurs in both the `-full_on_tools` and `-off_tools` lists. In the following example for ModelSim, the error occur only if `questa` tool name is specified in both the `-full_on_tools` and `-off_tools` string\_lists.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb
...
set_partial_on_translation OFF -full_on_tools {questa} -off_tools questa
...
```

**Vopt Message**

```
** Error: test.upf(5): UPF: (vopt-9762) The same string occurs in both the
-full_on_tools and -off_tools string_lists.
```

```
Usage: set_partial_on_translation [OFF | FULL_ON] [-full_on_tools  
{string_list}] [-off_tools {string_list}]
```

### **Example D-11. Error/Warning Conditions: set\_partial\_on\_translation Invoked More Than Once**

A Warning message is issued if set\_partial\_on\_translation is invoked more than once.

```
...  
upf_version 2.0  
set_scope tb  
...  
set_partial_on_translation OFF -full_on_tools {questa}  
set_partial_on_translation FULL_ON  
...
```

#### **Vopt Message**

```
** Warning: test.upf(6): UPF: (vopt-9763) Command  
'set_partial_on_translation' invoked more than once. Ignoring previous  
specification(s) of this command.
```

## set\_pin\_related\_supply

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
-pins	
-related_power_pin	
-related_ground_pin	

### Usage Notes

- Questa SIM assumes the driver/receiver logic supply to be the same as specified related supplies—that is, corruption, isolation, and level-shifting behavior is in accordance with the specified related supplies. When the supply specified using `set_pin_related_supply` (using `-related_power_pin` or `-related_ground_pin` is a different supply than that of actual driver or receiver logic, ModelSim gives a `vopt` error message (`vopt-9814`).

You can use the `-warning` argument of `vopt` to change the severity of this message to a warning so that simulation may continue:

```
vopt -warning 9814
```

Refer to [Power Aware Messages](#) for more information on changing the level of message severity.

## set\_port\_attributes

### Support for UPF Standard

- v1.0 — no
- v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-ports	N	Y	
-domains	N	Y	
-elements	N	Y	Complex data types of SystemVerilog, such as structs, are not supported.
-applies_to	N	Y	
-model	N	Y	
-attribute	N	Y	
-clamp_value	N	Y	
-sink_off_clamp	N	Y	
-source_off_clamp	N	Y	
-receiver_supply	N	Y	
-driver_supply	N	Y	
-related_power_port	N	Y	
-related_ground_port	N	Y	
-related_bias_ports	N	N	
-repeater_supply	N	Y	
-pg_type	N	Y	Might not work on UPF-created supply_ports/nets.
-exclude_domains	N	N	Not supported.
-exclude_elements	N	N	Not supported.
-exclude_ports	N	N	Not supported.
-transitive	N	N	Not supported.

### Usage Notes

- The -clamp\_value, -source\_off\_clamp, and -sink\_off\_clamp arguments affect the filtering of ports specified by the set\_isolation command.

- In some cases, `-related_power_port/-related_ground_port` might not work properly with `-model`.
- ModelSim assumes the driver/receiver logic supply to be the same as specified related supplies—that is, corruption, isolation, and level-shifting behavior is in accordance with the specified related supplies. When the supply specified using `set_port_attributes` (using `-related_power_port` or `-related_ground_port`) is a different supply than that of actual driver or receiver logic, ModelSim gives a vopt error message (vopt-9814).

You can use the `-warning` argument of `vopt` to change the severity of this message to a warning so that simulation may continue:

```
vopt -warning 9814
```

Refer to [Power Aware Messages](#) for more information on changing the level of message severity.

### Example

```
set_port_attributes -ports top/out -source_off clamp_1
```

## set\_power\_switch

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-output_supply_port	Y	Y	
-input_supply_port	Y	Y	
-control_port	Y	Y	
-on_state	Y	Y	
-supply_set	N	Y	When the supply set simstate is anything other than NORMAL, the state of the output supply port of a switch is OFF and the acknowledge ports are corrupted. Note that this differs from UPF v2.0, which states that the state of the output supply port of a switch is UNDETERMINED.
-on_partial_state	Y	Y	
-off_state	Y	Y	
-error_state	Y	Y	

### Usage Notes

The following is not supported:

- In order to model the definition of a power switch, the tool currently treats UNDETERMINED state as OFF state for simulation. This implies that when the state of supply set is NOT\_NORMAL, the state on the output supply port will be OFF instead of UNDETERMINED state.

## **set\_retention**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes (partial)

## Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	Y	Y	
-elements	Y	Y	
-retention_power_net	Y	Y	
-retention_ground_net	Y	Y	
-retention_supply_set	N	Y	Powers the register holding the retained value.
-no_retention	N	Y	Specifies that storage elements specified by the retention strategy do not have retention capability added.
-use_retention_as_primary	N	Y	Powers the storage element and the output drivers of the register using the retention supply.
-save_signal	N	Y	
-restore_signal	N	Y	
-instance	N	Y	<p>Recognizes the special attributes present on the specified instance, applies the appropriate simulation semantics, and makes the connections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If there is a port of type <code>pg_type</code> present on the instance, then <code>ModelSim</code> automatically connects the <code>primary_power</code> and <code>primary_ground</code> pins with primary power and primary ground nets of the power domain. It connects the backup power and backup ground pin specified on the instance with the retention power and ground nets specified in the strategy.</li> <li>• If there is no port of type <code>pg_type</code> present on the instance, then <code>ModelSim</code> applies implicit corruption semantics according to the <code>primary_power</code> and ground nets specified for the power domain.</li> </ul>
-update	N	Y	Allows adding elements and supplies to a previously created power domain.
-exclude_elements	N	N	Not supported.
-restore_condition	N	N	Not supported.
-retention_condition	N	N	Not supported.
-save_condition	N	N	Not supported.

---

<b>Argument</b>	<b>v1.0</b>	<b>v2.0</b>	<b>Comments/Restrictions</b>
-parameters	N	N	Not supported.
-transitive	N	N	Not supported.

## Usage Notes

### Restrictions:

- Corruption of retention element and saved value is not supported.
- The implicit corruption semantics are also applied to the shadow latch used to preserve the data during retention period. In order to remove the shadow latch from corruption, you must specify it in an exclude file (vopt -pa\_excludefile).

## set\_retention\_control

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes (partial)

v2.0 — yes (partial)

### Arguments

Argument	v1.0	v2.0	Comments/Restrictions
-domain	Y	Y	
-save_signal	Y	Y	
-restore_signal	Y	Y	
-assert_r_mutex	N	N	Not supported.
-assert_s_mutex	N	N	Not supported.
-assert_rs_mutex	N	N	Not supported.

## set\_scope

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
<instance>   <pathname>	

The syntax of `set_scope` in UPF only allows hierarchical path up to instances ( design elements ). This has been extended under the above mentioned switch to accept hierarchical path of generate blocks as well. This allows user to create power domains inside a generate blocks. e.g.

```
set_scope mid/forgen\[1\  
create_power_domain PD_forgen -include_scope
```

## set\_simstate\_behavior

### Support for UPF Standard

v1.0 — no

v2.0 — yes

### Arguments

Argument	Comments/Restrictions
ENABLE   DISABLE	<p>ENABLE applies simstate simulation semantics for every supply set automatically connected to an instance of a model. Elements implicitly connected to a particular supply set have simstate semantics enabled by default.</p> <p>DISABLE disables simstate simulation semantics recursively for all the descendants of the instance of the model. Elements automatically or explicitly connected to a particular supply set have simstate semantics disabled by default.</p>
-lib	<p>When both -lib and -model are specified, the simstate behavior is defined for the specified models in the specified library.</p> <p>If -model is not defined and -lib is specified, the simstate behavior is defined for all models in the specified library.</p> <p>The -elements argument has higher priority over -model and -lib.</p>
-model	
-elements <.list>	<p>Optional argument not specified in UPF v2.0. You specify a list of element names as the value to this argument, which determines the simulation simstate behavior for one or more design elements.</p>

### Usage Notes

The set\_simstate\_behavior command defines the simulation simstate behavior for a model or library. You can use this command to override the default enablement of simstate semantics.

ModelSim extends the behavior of this command by providing the -elements argument, which specifies the simulation simstate behavior for a design element.

## Examples

### Example D-12. Enable Simstate Behavior Using `set_simstate_behavior`

In the following example, automatic connections led to disablement of simstate semantics of model `mid`. The `set_simstate_behavior` command enables the simstate semantics of instances of the model.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
...
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model {mid}
...
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
```

### Example D-13. Disable Simstate Behavior Using `set_simstate_behavior`

In the following example, `set_simstate_behavior` disables the simulation semantics all instances of model `bot`.

```
set_scope tb/top1
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model {mid} -elements {mid3}
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -model {bot}
...
create_power_domain pd1
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
...
```

## Vopt Message

```
** Note: test.upf(7): UPF: (vopt-9693) Power Aware simulation semantics
disabled for /tb/top1/mid1/bot1.
** Note: test.upf(7): UPF: (vopt-9693) Power Aware simulation semantics
disabled for /tb/top1/mid1/bot2.
** Note: test.upf(7): UPF: (vopt-9693) Power Aware simulation semantics
disabled for /tb/top1/mid2/bot1.
** Note: test.upf(7): UPF: (vopt-9693) Power Aware simulation semantics
disabled for /tb/top1/mi
```



**Tip:** You can suppress the above messages by using the following argument with the `vopt` command: `vopt -suppress 9693`

---

### **Example D-14. When Both -models and -lib Arguments Are Specified**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
...
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model {mid} -lib lib_name1
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -model {top} -lib lib_name2
...
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
...
```

### **Example D-15. Specify Simstate Behavior For All Models in a Library**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
...
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -lib lib_name1
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -lib lib_name2
...
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
...
```

### **Example D-16. Use -elements Argument to Override or Specify Simstate Behavior (single element)**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
...
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -elements /tb/top1/mid1
...
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
```

### **Example D-17. Use -elements Argument to Override or Specify Simstate Behavior (list of elements)**

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
```

```
...
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model {mid}
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -elements {mid1 mid2}
...
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
```

### **Example D-18. Error/Warning Conditions: -lib Argument Without a Library**

It is an error if the specified library with -lib argument does not exist.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -lib lib1
...
```

#### **Vopt Message**

```
** Error: test.upf(4): UPF: (vopt-9753) Library 'lib1' does not exist.
```

### **Example D-19. Error/Warning Conditions: -model Argument Without a Model**

It is an error if the specified model (using -model argument) does not exist in the specified library (using -lib argument).

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model mad -lib work
...
```

#### **Vopt Message**

```
** Error: test.upf(4): UPF: (vopt-9655) Model: 'mad' doesn't exist in
library: 'work'.
```

### **Example D-20. Error/Warning Conditions: Conflicting Simstate Behaviors**

It is an error if a model has conflicting simstate behaviors specified.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
```

```
create_power_domain pd1
...
set_simstate_behavior ENABLE -model { mid top }
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -model { mid }
...
```

### Vopt Message

```
** Error: (vopt-9730) Attribute:'upf_simstate_behavior DISABLE' on design
object:'mid1' conflict
```

## Example D-21. Error/Warning Conditions: DISABLE Argument Used Without Supply Ports

It is an error if DISABLE is specified and the model has no supply ports.

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb/top1
create_power_domain pd1
...
set_simstate_behavior DISABLE -model {mid}
...
create_supply_net VDD_N -domain pd1
create_supply_net GND_N -domain pd1
...
```

### Vopt Message

```
** Error: test.upf(6): UPF: (vopt-9756) Power aware simulation semantics
cannot be disabled for design element '/tb/top1/mid1'.
** Error: test.upf(6): UPF: (vopt-9756) Power aware simulation semantics
cannot be disabled for
```

## **upf\_version**

### **Support for UPF Standard**

v1.0 — yes

v2.0 — yes

### **Arguments**

none

## Supported UPF Package Functions

The following tables list the package functions supported for VHDL ([Table D-3](#)) and SystemVerilog ([Table D-4](#)).

**Table D-3. Supported UPF Package Functions for VHDL**

Function Name
function supply_on ( pad_name : IN string ; value : IN real ) return boolean;
function supply_off ( pad_name : IN string ) return boolean;
function supply_partial_on ( pad_name : IN string; value : real ) return boolean;
function get_supply_value ( pad_name : IN string ) return supply_net_type;
function get_supply_voltage ( value : IN supply_net_type ) return real;
function get_supply_on_state ( value : IN supply_net_type ) return boolean;
function get_supply_on_state ( value : IN supply_net_type ) return bit;
function get_supply_state ( value : IN supply_net_type ) return net_state;

**Table D-4. Supported UPF Package Functions for SystemVerilog**

Function Name
function bit supply_on( string pad_name, real value );
function bit supply_off( string pad_name );
function bit supply_partial_on( string pad_name, real value );
function supply_net_type get_supply_value( string name );
function real get_supply_voltage( supply_net_type arg );
function bit get_supply_on_state( supply_net_type arg );
function bit [1:0] get_supply_state( supply_net_type arg );

## Accessing Generate Blocks in UPF

In order to access hierarchy as defined in individual languages or as ModelSim accepts it, UPF uses square bracket pairs, [ ]. This is because UPF is written in Tcl, so in some contexts square brackets can be interpreted as special command substitution characters—though you usually need to use escape characters with them for that purpose. The exception to this when using a UPF command argument that takes a list of values enclosed in braces, { }, because that is not actually command substitution.

The following examples show how to generate references in UPF for both Verilog and VHDL.

```
create_power_domain pd -elements { top_vh/for_genvh__1/bot_vh_inst
top_vl/forgen_vl[1]/bot_vl_inst }
```

```
create_power_domain pd          -elements { top_vh/for_genvh(1)/bot_vh_inst
top_vl/forgen_vl[1]/bot_vl_inst }
```

## Limitation

Connections from UPF to HDL port of inout type are not supported for inout capability. These connections are made in such a way that UPF is driving data to the HDL port.

## Supported UPF Attributes

ModelSim supports the use of UPF attributes used to express the power intent in an HDL model. You can specify these attributes using the following methods:

- UPF commands (set\_design\_attributes, set\_port\_attributes, set\_isolation, set\_pin\_related\_supply, set\_simstate\_behavior, set\_retention\_elements)
- VHDL or SystemVerilog attributes
- Liberty cell specification

[Table D-5](#) lists the UPF attributes supported by ModelSim.

**Table D-5. Supported UPF Attributes**

HDL Attribute	Value(s)	UPF Command
UPF_clamp_value	0   1   Z   latch   any   <value>	set_isolation -clamp_value set_port_attributes -clamp_value

**Table D-5. Supported UPF Attributes**

HDL Attribute	Value(s)	UPF Command
UPF_sink_off_clamp_value	0   1   Z   latch   any   <value>	set_isolation -sink_off_clamp_value set_port_attributes -sink_off_clamp_value
UPF_source_off_clamp_value	0   1   Z   latch   any   <value>	set_isolation -source_off_clamp_value set_port_attributes -source_off_clamp_value
UPF_pg_type	<pg_type_value>	set_port_attributes -pg_type
UPF_related_ground_pin	<port_name>	set_pin_related_supply -related_ground_pin set_port_attributes -related_ground_port
UPF_related_power_pin	<port_name>	set_pin_related_supply -related_power_pin set_port_attributes -related_power_port
UPF_related_bias_pin	<port_name>	set_port_attributes -related_bias_port
UPF_retention	required   optional	set_retention_elements -retention
UPF_simstate_behavior	ENABLE   DISABLE	set_simstate_behavior

## Specifying Attributes

You can use the `set_design_attributes` and `set_port_attributes` commands to specify attributes for Power Aware simulation. The following arguments for these UPF commands are now supported:

- `set_design_attributes`
  - elements
  - models
  - attribute
- `set_port_attributes`
  - ports
  - domains
  - elements
  - model

- attribute
- clamp\_value
- sink\_off\_clamp\_value
- source\_off\_clamp\_value
- related\_power\_port
- related\_ground\_port
- pg\_type

## Limitations

- In some cases, -related\_power\_port/-related\_ground\_port might not work properly with -model.
- -pg\_type might not work on UPF-created supply\_ports/nets.
- -source\_off\_clamp\_value -sink\_off\_clamp\_value -clamp\_value only affects the filtering of ports affected by the set\_isolation command.

## Attributes in VHDL or SystemVerilog

You can also specify all supported attributes using VHDL or SystemVerilog.

VHDL example:

```
(attribute UPF_pg_type of vdd_backup : signal is "backup_power"
```

System Verilog example:

```
(* UPF_pg_type = "backup_power" *) input vdd_backup;
```

## Specifying Supply Nets in UPF

The connect\_supply\_net command specifies connection to a supply net that conforms to the behavior described in 6.13 of IEEE Std 1801-2009. A UPF supply net is propagated through implicitly created ports and throughout the logic hierarchy of the scope in which the net is created.

## Format of Assigned Net Values

A supply net connected by this command is a composite signal consisting of a real voltage value (in  $\mu\text{V}$ ) and an enumerated supply state (ON, OFF). For ModelSim, the default voltage value is  $81\mu\text{V}$  on both VDD and VSS / GND nets (a voltage value is not used for dynamic simulation).

For simulating a digital design, the more important information for the net is whether its supply state is ON or OFF. Regardless of whether the power supply net is VDD or GND, when the

power supply state is ON, the state value assumes an integer value of 1. When the supply state is OFF, the state value assumes an integer value of 0. By default, the power state is ON.

Consequently, ModelSim reports the two default values of 81 and 1 to a power net as 81\_0000000001. Note that the output of a switch in UPF whose control port has been driven to the OFF state is always 0 $\mu$ V and a 0 supply state (reported by ModelSim as 0\_0000000000).

## Changing the Default Supply State Values for VHDL Models

When you connect a supply net to an HDL port to extend the UPF supply network directly to an HDL model, ModelSim connects the net to the HDL port and converts the enumerated supply state to the HDL port type.

By default, ModelSim performs the following conversion:

```
{supply_state_type.state = ON} => {HDL bit type = 1'b1}  
{supply_state_type.state = OFF} => {HDL bit type = 1'b0}
```

However, for VHDL models in the design (such as memory models), this results in a logical '1' on ground and VSS nets.

To change this default conversion, you need to define a UPF-to-VHDL Value Conversion Table (VCT) from that converts UPF supply states to their corresponding VHDL bit values. You then need to apply the conversion when connecting the supply net in the UPF file.

1. Define a Value Change Table for UPF-to-VHDL conversion, by doing either of the following:
  - Use the `create_upf2hdl_vct` command to create a VCT that defines the conversion. For example:

```
create_upf2hdl_vct upf2vhdl_vss  
-hdl_type {vhdl std_logic}  
-table {{OFF 1} {ON 0} {PARTIAL_ON X}}
```

where `upf2vhdl_vss` is the name of the table, `-hdl_type` specifies VHDL `std_logic` for the data type and `-table` maps OFF to 1, ON to 0, and PARTIAL\_ON to X. Note that this reverses the default conversion values.

- Use a predefined VCT provided by Questa (see [Predefined VCTs Supported from the UPF Standard](#)) to perform the conversion mapping. In this example, the `UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_SL` table performs this conversion.

---

### Note



Using a predefined VCT is easier, but it requires implementation of UPF 2.0 (IEEE Std 1801-2009), so both methods are shown here.

---

2. Implement the VCT conversion in your UPF file by using the `-vct` argument of the `connect_supply_net` command. Continuing with the examples from Step 1, use either one of the following:

- Assign the name of the VCT you defined (`upf2vhdl_vss`) to the `-vct` argument:

```
connect_supply_net power_supply_net { HDL_port .. } -vct upf2vhdl_vss
```

- Assign the name of the predefined VCT you selected (`UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_SL`) to the `-vct` argument:

```
connect_supply_net power_supply_net { HDL_port .. }  
-vct UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_SL
```

## Supported UPF Extensions

### Using `-pa_upfextensions`

The `-pa_upfextensions` argument to the `vopt` command allows you to define and apply various UPF behaviors that are not supported by the current standard (UPF v2.0). [Table D-6](#) lists the values for this argument that you can specify to override supported UPF behavior.

#### Syntax

```
vopt -pa_upfextensions=[ignorepgports] [ignorepgportsaon] [relatedsnet] [nonlrmstaternames]  
[s] [genblk] [v] [nonameclash] [altgenname] [all] [default]
```

#### Description

- To specify more than one value for this argument, use the `+` operator between values (there is no order dependency when specifying multiple values). For example:

```
vopt -pa_upfextensions=relatedsnet+genblk+v
```

- To enable all values, specify the following:

```
vopt -pa_upfextensions=all
```

- To enable a limited number of values (see [default](#) in [Table D-6](#)), specify either of the following:

```
vopt -pa_upfextensions=default  
vopt -pa_upfextensions
```

**Table D-6. Power Aware Actions for vopt -pa\_upfextensions**

Value	Action
ignorepgports	<p>Bypasses connection of a supply net to a port using the <a href="#">connect_supply_net</a> command when the port is missing in the verification model but is a power or ground (PG) pin in the Liberty model.</p> <p>In this case, the <code>connect_supply_net</code> command to these ports is ignored.</p> <p>This is equivalent to using <code>vopt -pa_connectpgpin=i</code></p>
ignorepgportsaon	<p>Bypasses connection of a supply net to a port using the <a href="#">connect_supply_net</a> command when the port is missing in the verification model but is a power or ground (PG) pin in the Liberty model.</p> <p>In this case, <code>connect_supply_net</code> command to these ports is ignored and the Power Aware simulation semantics of the parent instance of the the port are disabled.</p> <p>This is equivalent to using <code>vopt -pa_connectpgpin=a</code></p>
relatedsnet	<p>Supports the behavior for the Tcl command <a href="#">set_related_supply_net</a>.</p>
nonlrmstatenames	<p>Allows non-standard UPF names in state name of <a href="#">add_port_state</a> command. For example:</p> <pre>add_port_state VN1 -state {1p1 1.0}</pre>
s	<p>Allows relative paths in <code>set_scope</code> command. For example:</p> <pre>set_scope ../../</pre>
genblk	<p>Allows generate block to be used in <a href="#">set_scope</a> and <a href="#">create_power_domain</a> (-elements argument) commands.</p>
v	<p>Allows automatic insertion of <code>vct</code> for pins detected as power and ground pins.</p>
nonameclash	<p>Ignores the name clash error that occurs for ports of the <a href="#">set_power_switch</a> command that are specified for the <code>-input_supply_port</code> or <code>-output_supply_port</code> arguments and that already exist in RTL.</p>

**Table D-6. Power Aware Actions for vopt -pa\_upfextensions (cont.)**

Value	Action
altgenname	<p>Supports the synthesis style hier-paths for generate blocks. ModelSim recognizes a hier-path with an escaped generate scope of the form that a synthesis tool generates, and maps such a name to a hierarchical name of conventional form.</p> <p>For example, each of the following styles—</p> <pre> {&lt; prefix &gt;/}gen_label[index].name2   {/&lt; suffix &gt;} /* 'gen_label[index].name2' is the new name of the instance 'name2' within scope gen_label[index].*/  {&lt; prefix &gt;/}\\gen_label[index].name2   {/&lt; suffix &gt;} /* The new name could also be double- escaped. */  {&lt; prefix &gt;.)gen_label[index].name2   {/&lt; suffix &gt;} /* Use '.' as a path separator for generate scopes */ </pre> <p>would map to—</p> <pre> {&lt; prefix &gt;/}gen_label[index]/name2   {/&lt; suffix &gt;} </pre>
all	<p>Enables (specifies) all values of the -pa_upfextensions argument.</p>
default	<p>Enables (specifies) only the following values of the -pa_upfextensions argument:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ignorepgports</li> <li>• relatedsnet</li> <li>• nonlrmstatenames</li> <li>• s</li> <li>• v</li> <li>• genblk</li> <li>• nonameclash</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Specifying vopt -pa_upfextensions with no values has the same effect.</p>

## UPF Supply Connections

Supply connections between various UPF objects can be made between supply nets, supply sets, supply ports, power switches and UPF objects such as retention, isolation, level shifter cells. You can define these connections in the following ways:

- [Implicit Connections](#)
- [Explicit Connections](#)
- [Automatic Connections](#)
- [Power State Composition](#)

### Implicit Connections

Implicit connections provide a way to connect supply nets to elements that do not have supply ports. Any design element that is present in the extent of power domain and does not have supply ports connected or is excluded from Power Aware processing (-pa\_excludefile ) will be implicitly connected with the primary supplies (power and ground) of the power domain. Thus, the corruption of that element will depend on the state of the primary power net and primary ground net of the power domain.

### Explicit Connections

You can explicitly connect a supply net to a supply port using the following UPF command:

```
connect_supply_net
```

This explicit connection overrides (has higher precedence than) the implicit and automatic connection semantics that might otherwise apply.

Explicit connections include:

- Connections to UPF-created supply ports
- Connections to HDL-created supply ports (supply\_net\_type or 1-bit type)
- Connections to supply ports of power switches

Explicit connection to an HDL supply port has simulation semantics disabled by default (see “[Simulation Semantics for UPF Supply Connections](#)”). Driving an HDL port from UPF overrides its RTL connection.

## Explicit Connections to HDL Ports

Using the `connect_supply_net` command, you can connect a UPF-created supply net to an HDL-created supply port and a UPF-created supply port to an HDL-created supply net. To ensure the supply net state and voltage values are propagated and modeled in the various HDLs, you must use the `supply_net_type` datatype. You can make these datatypes visible by importing UPF defined HDL packages (refer to Appendix B in UPF v1.0 and Annex B in IEEE Std 1801-2009).

### Examples

HDL specification (Verilog):

```
module memory(input supply_net_type vdd, ..);  
  ...  
endmodule
```

HDL specification (VHDL):

```
entity memory is  
  port (vdd : in supply_net_type; ..)  
  ...  
end entity
```

UPF specification:

```
connect_supply_net vdd_switchable -ports mem/vdd
```

## Explicit Connections to 1-bit HDL Ports

UPF also allows supply connections between supply nets and 1-bit Verilog/VHDL ports for building simple functional models. In these cases, HDL supply ports are connected to the ON/OFF state bit of the supply net. For complex modeling, you can use value change tables (VCTs) for the conversion from the supply net state to values relevant to an HDL type, or vice-versa.

### Limitation

Enumerated HDL types are not supported.

### Examples

HDL specification (Verilog):

```
module memory(input vdd, ..);  
  ...  
endmodule
```

HDL specification (VHDL):

```
entity memory is
port (vdd : in std_logic; ..)
..
end entity
```

UPF specification:

```
connect_supply_net vdd_switchable -ports mem/vdd
```

## Explicit Connections to Supply Ports of Power Switch

You can use the `connect_supply_net` command to define connections to supply ports of power switch. For example:

```
create_power_switch SW \
  -input_supply_ports {IN_SW} \
  ..
connect_supply_net VDD_IN -ports {SW.IN_SW}
```

You can also specify connections using the `create_power_switch` command. For example:

```
create_power_switch SW \
  -input_supply_ports {IN_SW VDD_IN} \
  ..
```

## Automatic Connections

Questa supports the UPF automatic connection semantics of supply nets and supply sets as defined by IEEE Std 1801-2009 (UPF v2.0).

Automatic connections semantics are defined for:

- Supply nets    using the `connect_supply_net` command  
                  (see “[Automatic Connections for Supply Nets](#)”)
- Supply sets    using either the `connect_supply_set` or `create_power_domain` command  
                  (see “[Automatic Connections for Supply Sets](#)”)

The necessary conditions for the supply nets (or supply nets of supply sets) to automatically connected to the supply ports of design elements are:

- Design element has a port with `-pg_type` attribute. The `pg_type` attribute includes
  - String type HDL attribute named either `pg_type` or `UPF_pg_type`.
  - Implementation library model with `pg_type` attribute.
- Value of the `pg_type` attribute of the port matches with the `pg_type` value specified using UPF commands.

Simulation semantics of all the design elements whose ports are automatically connected to power supply are disabled (see “[Simulation Semantics for UPF Supply Connections](#)”).

## Automatic Connections for Supply Nets

You can define automatic connection semantics on individual supply nets using the following UPF command:

```
connect_supply_net -pg_type -domain -cells
```

Questa will automatically connect the specified supply net with the supply ports on the specified cell or the design elements within the extent of power domain which fulfills the necessary conditions for automatic connection semantics. You can also specify Value Conversion Tables (VCTs) for automatic connection semantics by using the `-vct` argument.

Using the `-vct` argument has a restriction that all the ports that are connected using `connect_supply_net` should have matching types, since the type matching for VCT will produce error during connections.

For example:

```
connect_supply_net snet -domain PD -pg_type primary_power -vct my_sv_vct
```

This will produce an error message when domain PD has a vhdl instance contain supply port with `pg_type primary_power` and different type and create the connection, assuming a 1-bit connection.

## Command Syntax

UPF v1.0:

```
connect_supply_net net_name
  [-ports list] [-pins list]
  [<-cells list | -domain domain_name>]
  [<-rail_connection rail_type | -pg_type pg_type>]*
  [-vct vct_name]
```

UPF2.0:

```
connect_supply_net net_name"
```

```
[-ports list]
[-pg_type {pg_type_list element_list}]*
[-vct vct_name] [-pins list]
[-cells list] [-domain domain_name]
[-rail_connection rail_type]
```

Currently, the `connect_supply_net` command in UPF2.0 is modeled as its equivalent command in UPF v1.0. That is, `connect_supply_net` command in UPF v2.0 will not accept `element_list` in `-pg_type` argument.

## Examples

```
connect_supply_net VDD -domain PD_SW -pg_type primary_power
connect_supply_net Vdd_backup -cells {RET_CELL} -pg_type backup_power
connect_supply_net VSS -domain PD_SW -pg_type primary_ground -vct
    UPF_GNDZERO2SV_LOGIC.
```

## Automatic Connections for Supply Sets

You can define automatic connection semantics on supply sets using either of the following UPF commands:

```
connect_supply_set -connect
create_power_domain -define_func_type
```

ModelSim automatically connects supply nets of supply sets to the supply ports of design elements. This connection is based on the purpose of the supply set in a given domain or strategy context and the function that a supply net performs in the context of supply set.

## Limitations

- Supply sets specified in strategy context will not be automatically connected to design elements owing to separate infrastructure in `-instance`.
- Supply nets in supply sets functioning as predefined supply set functions are not automatically connected as per their predefined function. Explicit specification of automatic connections must be specified.

## Command Syntax

Using `connect_supply_set`:

```
connect_supply_set supply_set_ref
    {-connect {supply_function {pg_type_list}}}*
    [-elements element_list]
    [-exclude_elements exclude_list]
    [-transitive ]
```

Using `create_power_domain`:

```
create_power_domain
  [-define_func_type {supply_function {pg_type_list}}]*
```

## Examples

```
create_power_domain PD \
  -define_func_type {power primary_power} \
  -define_func_type {always_on backup_power} \
  ..

connect_supply_set PD.primary \
  -connect {power primary_power} \
  -elements TOP

connect_supply_set PD.ISO.isolation_supply_set \
  -connect {iso_power primary_power} \
  -connect {iso_ground primary_ground} \

connect_supply_set PD.RET.retention_supply_set \
  -connect {ret_backup_power backup_power} \
  -connect {switchtable_supply primary_power}
```

## Power State Composition

States of ports and nets carry voltage and on/off information, which means combinations of power states of supply ports and/or nets are important in identifying the requirement of isolation cells and level shifters on boundaries between two power domains. Because a power state added on one domain/supply set can reference other power states added on another domain/supply set, ModelSim can statically infer such dependencies. These dependencies help in determining the combinations of power states of supply nets and/or ports.

You can add composite power states to your design as follows:

- Supply net — power state information (state and voltage level) is defined by the `supply_net_type` declaration of the HDL cell (see [Explicit Connections to HDL Ports](#)).
- Supply port — power state information (state and voltage level) is defined by the `supply_net_type` declaration of the HDL cell (see [Explicit Connections to HDL Ports](#)).
- Supply set — composed of two or more supply nets, so its power state is specified in terms of those supply nets.
- Power domain — power state is determined by the state of supply sets associated with the domain.

ModelSim performs level shifter and isolation cell analysis/checks from information provided with `add_power_state` UPF commands and also reports the power domain state dependencies in report files.

To know whether an isolation or level-shifting is required on a boundary between power domains, a static analysis is required to determine state dependencies between these power domains (or supply sets associated with these domains). The dependency information is extracted from supply/logic expression (mentioned in `add_power_state` command) of various power states from power domains or supply sets.

A valid combination of two power states of domains/supply sets is equivalent to a valid combination of power states of certain supply ports/supply nets (state and voltages). ModelSim uses this net state and voltage information to determine whether isolation or level-shifting is required or not.

---

**Note**



For the cases where ModelSim is statically not able to determine whether the state combination of two power domain/supply sets is invalid (or these power states cannot co-exist at any point of time), ModelSim assumes it to be a valid state combination.

---

In the following example for static analysis, ModelSim assumes that `PD1_ON` and `PD2_ON` may co-exist at some point of time.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_ON
  {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}

add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_ON
  {-supply_expr {VDD2 == FULL_ON && GND2 == FULL_ON}}
```

This information corresponds that (`VDD1` is `FULL_ON`, `GND1` is `FULL_ON`, `VDD2` is `FULL_ON`, `GND2` is `FULL_ON`) may exist at some point of time.

---

**Note**



For better static analysis, it is recommended to include the state information of primary nets of power domain in supply expression of `add_power_state` for power domain (or its associated supply set).

Also, to determine the state relation between two power domains/supply sets, ModelSim uses the information specified in power states of those two power domains/supply sets.

---

For example:

```
create_supply_net VDD ...
create_supply_net GND ...
set_domain_supply_net PD1 -primary_power_net VDD -primary_ground_net GND
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_ON {-logic_expr {PD2 == PD2_OFF}}
```

```
-supply_expr {VDD == FULL_ON && GND == FULL_ON}}
```

## Determining State Dependency with add\_power\_state Arguments

You can use the following arguments of the UPF `add_power_state` command to determine whether power states of different power domains can co-exist:

- `-logic_expr`
- `-supply_expr`

The following examples show various ways of using these arguments.

### Example D-22. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -logic\_expr — Case 1

In this example, from `logic_expr` of `PD1_S1` ModelSim determines that state `PD1_S1` and `PD2_S2` cannot co-exist.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-logic_expr {PD2 != PD2_S2}
  -supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}

add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
  GND1 == FULL_ON}}
```

### Example D-23. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -logic\_expr — Case 2

In this example, from `logic_expr` of `PD1_S1` and `PD2_S2` ModelSim determines that state `PD1_S1` and `PD2_S2` cannot co-exist, as one requires `ctrl` to be 1 and other requires it to be 0.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-logic_expr {ctrl} -supply_expr
  {VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}

add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-logic_expr {!ctrl} -supply_expr
  {VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}
```

### Example D-24. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -logic\_expr — Case 3

In this example, from `logic_expr` of `PD1_S1`, `PD3_S3` ModelSim determines that state `PD1_S1` and `PD2_S2` cannot co-exist.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-logic_expr {PD3 == PD3_S3}
  -supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}
```

```
add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-logic_expr {!ctrl} -supply_expr
{VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}

add_power_state PD3 -state PD3_S3 {-logic_expr {PD2 != PD2_S2}
-supply_expr {VDD3 == FULL_ON && GND3 == FULL_ON}}
```

#### **Example D-25. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -logic\_expr — Case 4**

In this example, from logic\_expr of PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 ModelSim determines that state PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 cannot co-exist, as one requires ctrl to be 1 and other requires it to be 0.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-logic_expr {ctrl == 1} -supply_expr
{VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}

add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-logic_expr {!ctrl} -supply_expr
{VDD1 == FULL_ON && GND1 == FULL_ON}}
```

#### **Example D-26. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -supply\_expr — Case 1**

In this example, from supply\_expr of PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 (VDD state) ModelSim determines that state PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 cannot co-exist.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
GND1 == FULL_ON && VDD == FULL_ON}}

add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
GND1 == FULL_ON && VDD == OFF}}
```

#### **Example D-27. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -supply\_expr — Case 2**

In this example, from supply\_expr of PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 (VDD state), ModelSim determines that state PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 cannot co-exist.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
GND1 == FULL_ON && VDD == FULL_ON}}
add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
GND1 == FULL_ON && VDD != FULL_ON}}
```

**Example D-28. Dependency Specified with add\_power\_state -supply\_expr — Case 3**

In this example, from supply\_expr of PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 (VDD voltage range), ModelSim determines that state PD1\_S1 and PD2\_S2 cannot co-exist.

```
add_power_state PD1 -state PD1_S1 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
  GND1 == FULL_ON && VDD == '{FULL_ON, 0.8, 1.4}}}}
add_power_state PD2 -state PD2_S2 {-supply_expr {VDD1 == FULL_ON &&
  GND1 == FULL_ON && VDD == '{FULL_ON, 1.6, 2.4}}}}
```

## Power State Reporting

ModelSim provides the following types of information in the report files:

- Information about the power state added on power domain/supply sets.
- Power State dependencies between connected power domains.

### Example Report (Excerpt)

```
Power state info of Power domain : 'PD_tb'.
  1. Power state 'PD_tb_normal', File: src/testcase4/test.upf(15).
     Supply Expression : (((tb_pow)==('{FULL_ON , 3.30
  })))&&(((tb_gnd)==('{FULL_ON , 1.00  }))).
     Function States :
       1. Ground(tb_gnd) == {FULL_ON,1.00}, Power(tb_pow) ==
          {FULL_ON,3.30}.

Power state info of Power domain : 'PD_mid2'.
  1. Power state 'PD_mid2_off', File: src/testcase4/test.upf(67).
     Supply Expression : (((mid2_MAIN_NET)==('{OFF
  })))&&(((mid2_GND_NET)==('{OFF  }))).
     Function States :
       1. Ground(mid2_GND_NET) == {OFF}, Power(mid2_MAIN_NET) ==
          {OFF}.

  2. Power state 'PD_mid2_normal', File: src/testcase4/test.upf(66).
     Supply Expression : (((mid2_MAIN_NET)==('{FULL_ON , 4.20
  })))&&(((mid2_GND_NET)==('{FULL_ON , 1.30  }))).
     Function States :
       1. Ground(mid2_GND_NET) == {FULL_ON,1.30}, Power(mid2_MAIN_NET)
          == {FULL_ON,4.20}.

Power State Combinations for connected domains :

Power Domain 'PD_mid1'                Power Domain 'PD_wrapper1'
-----
PD_mid1_off                            PD_wrapper1_normal
```

Power Domain 'PD_mid1'	Power Domain 'PD_wrapper2'
-----	-----
PD_mid1_off	PD_wrapper2_normal
PD_mid1_normal	PD_wrapper2_normal
Power Domain 'PD_mid1'	Power Domain 'PD_mid3'
-----	-----
PD_mid1_off	PD_mid3_off
PD_mid1_off	PD_mid3_normal
PD_mid1_normal	PD_mid3_off
PD_mid1_normal	PD_mid3_normal
Power Domain 'PD_wrapper1'	Power Domain 'PD_mid3'
-----	-----
PD_wrapper1_normal	PD_mid3_off
PD_wrapper1_normal	PD_mid3_normal

## Value Conversion Tables

A value conversion table (VCT) is a UPF definition (IEEE Std1801-2009) of how to convert, or map, a value from a supply net state relevant to an HDL variable type (and from an HDL variable type to a supply net state). This mapping enables complex modeling of connections between supply nets and RTL ports.

## Using VCT Commands

ModelSim can use the `create_upf2hdl_vct` and `create_hdl2upf_vct` commands in the UPF file for modeling complex connections between a supply net and RTL port.

ModelSim also automatically inserts VCT for pins detected as power and ground pins when you specify `vopt -pa_upfextensions`.

## Examples

The following examples show the `create_upf2hdl_vct` and `create_hdl2upf_vct` commands in a UPF file.

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_SL2UPF \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table {{'U' OFF} \  

```

```

        {'X' OFF} \
        {'0' OFF} \
        {'1' ON} \
        {'Z' OFF} \
        {'L' OFF} \
        {'H' ON} \
        {'W' OFF} \
        {'-' OFF}}

create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2SV_LOGIC \
    -hdl_type sv \
    -table {{PARTIAL_ON X} \
            {OFF 1} \
            {ON 0}}

```

**Note**

If VCT definition for a connection is not applicable or fails, then default 1-bit connection semantics will be applied. For example:

```

module memory (input gnd, ...);
    ...
endmodule

connect_supply_net gnd_switchable -ports mem_sv/gnd -vct
SV_LOGIC2UPF_GNDZERO

```

Data flow for the connection is UPF to RTL but VCT is specified as RTL to UPF. Hence, specified VCT is not applicable.

## Limitations

Only the following HDL data types are supported:

- System Verilog — logic, bit, wire, reg
- Verilog — wire, reg
- VHDL — bit, std\_logic, std\_ulogic, Boolean  
(NOTE: Any subtypes of these are not supported.)

## Predefined VCTs Supported from the UPF Standard

ModelSim provides several predefined VCTs described in Annex C of IEEE Std1801-2009, which you can use with the `connect_supply_net -vct` command.

The predefined VCT definitions provided with ModelSim are listed below.

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_SL2UPF \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table { {'U' OFF} \  
{'X' OFF} \  
{'0' OFF} \  
{'1' ON} \  
{'Z' OFF} \  
{'L' OFF} \  
{'H' ON} \  
{'W' OFF} \  
{'-' OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF2VHDL_SL \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON 'X'} \  
{ON '1'} \  
{OFF '0'}}
```

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_SL2UPF_GNDZERO \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table { {'U' OFF} \  
{'X' OFF} \  
{'0' ON} \  
{'1' OFF} \  
{'Z' OFF} \  
{'L' ON} \  
{'H' OFF} \  
{'W' OFF} \  
{'-' OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_SL \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON 'X'} \  
{OFF '1'} \  
{ON '0'}}
```

```
create_hdl2upf_vct SV_LOGIC2UPF \  
-hdl_type sv \  
-table {{X OFF} \  
{Z PARTIAL_ON } \  
{1 ON } \  
{0 OFF }}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF2SV_LOGIC \  
-hdl_type sv \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON X} \  
{ON 1} \  
{OFF 0}}
```

```
create_hdl2upf_vct SV_LOGIC2UPF_GNDZERO \  
-hdl_type sv \  
-table {{X OFF} \  
{Z PARTIAL_ON } \  
{1 ON } \  
{0 OFF }}
```

```
{0 ON} \  
{1 OFF} \  
{Z OFF}}  
  
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2SV_LOGIC \  
-hdl_type sv \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON X} \  
{OFF 1} \  
{ON 0}}  
  
create_upf2hdl_vct VHDL_TIED_HI \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table {{ON '1'} \  
{PARTIAL_ON 'X'} \  
{OFF 'X'}}  
  
create_upf2hdl_vct SV_TIED_HI \  
-hdl_type sv \  
-table {{ON 1} \  
{PARTIAL_ON X} \  
{OFF X}}  
  
create_upf2hdl_vct VHDL_TIED_LO \  
-hdl_type {vhdl} \  
-table {{ON '0'} \  
{PARTIAL_ON '0'} \  
{OFF 'X'}}  
  
create_upf2hdl_vct SV_TIED_LO \  
-hdl_type sv \  
-table {{ON 0} \  
{PARTIAL_ON X} \  
{OFF X}}  
  
create_hdl2upf_vct SV_BIT2UPF \  
-hdl_type {sv bit} \  
-table {{1 ON} \  
{0 OFF}}  
  
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF2SV_BIT \  
-hdl_type {sv bit} \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON 0} \  
{ON 1} \  
{OFF 0}}  
  
create_hdl2upf_vct SV_BIT2UPF_GNDZERO \  
-hdl_type {sv bit} \  
-table {{0 ON} \  
{1 OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2SV_BIT \  
-hdl_type {sv bit}\  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON 1} \  
{OFF 1} \  
{ON 0}}
```

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_BIT2UPF \  
-hdl_type {vhdl bit} \  
-table {{'1' ON} \  
{'0' OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF2VHDL_BIT \  
-hdl_type {vhdl bit} \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON '0'} \  
{ON '1'} \  
{OFF '0'}}\  
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_BIT2UPF_GNDZERO \  
-hdl_type {vhdl bit}\  
-table {{'0' ON} \  
{'1' OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_BIT \  
-hdl_type {vhdl bit}\  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON '1'} \  
{OFF '1'} \  
{ON '0'}}
```

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_BOOL2UPF \  
-hdl_type {vhdl boolean} \  
-table {{TRUE ON} \  
{FALSE OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF2VHDL_BOOL \  
-hdl_type {vhdl boolean} \  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON FALSE} \  
{ON TRUE} \  
{OFF FALSE}}
```

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_BOOL2UPF_GNDZERO \  
-hdl_type {vhdl boolean}\  
-table {{FALSE ON} \  
{TRUE OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_BOOL \  
-hdl_type {vhdl bit}\  
-table {{PARTIAL_ON TRUE} \  
{OFF TRUE} \  
{ON FALSE}}
```

## Connections Using Value Conversion Tables (VCTs)

You can model more complex connections between supply nets and HDL ports by using either of the following UPF commands to define value conversions:

```
create_upf2hdl_vct
create_hdl2upf_vct
```

### Limitations

Only following types are supported in HDL data types:

- SystemVerilog (logic, bit, wire, reg)
- Verilog (wire, reg)
- VHDL (bit, std\_logic, std\_ulogic, Boolean).

Any subtypes of these are not supported.

### Examples

```
create_hdl2upf_vct VHDL_SL2UPF \
-hdl_type {vhdl} \
-table {{'U' OFF} \
      {'X' OFF} \
      {'0' OFF} \
      {'1' ON} \
      {'Z' OFF} \
      {'L' OFF} \
      {'H' ON} \
      {'W' OFF} \
      {'-' OFF}}
```

```
create_upf2hdl_vct UPF_GNDZERO2SV_LOGIC \
-hdl_type sv \
-table {{PARTIAL_ON X} \
      {OFF 1} \
      {ON 0}}
```

In addition, you can specify an existing value conversion table (VCT) using the following UPF command and argument:

```
connect_supply_net -vct
```

**Note**



ModelSim provides several predefined VCT definitions (see “[Value Conversion Tables](#)”) that you with `connect_supply_net -vct`. However, if the VCT specification for a connection is not applicable or valid, then ModelSim applies the default 1-bit connection semantics.

---

## Examples

### RTL Specification (Verilog):

```
module memory (input VSS, VDD);  
  ..  
endmodule
```

### RTL Specification (VHDL):

```
entity memory is  
  port (VSS : in std_logic; VDD: in std_logic;..)  
  ..  
end entity
```

### UPF specification:

```
connect_supply_net VDD_switchable -ports mem_sv/VDD  
connect_supply_net VSS_switchable -ports mem_sv/VSS -vct  
UPF_GNDZERO2SV_LOGIC
```

```
connect_supply_net VDD_switchable -ports mem_vhd/VDD  
connect_supply_net VSS_switchable -ports mem_vhd/gnd -vct  
UPF_GNDZERO2VHDL_SL
```

### RTL Specification (Verilog):

```
module memory (input VSS, ..);  
  ...  
endmodule
```

### UPF specification:

```
connect_supply_net VSS_switchable -ports mem_sv/VSS -vct  
SV_LOGIC2UPF_GNDZERO
```

Data flow for the connection is UPF to HDL, but VCT is specified as HDL to UPF. As a result, the specified VCT is not applicable.

## Simulation Semantics for UPF Supply Connections

Power Aware simulation semantics are automatically disabled for design elements that are explicitly or automatically connected to a particular supply net or supply set. Simulation semantics are disabled for all the descendants of the instance of model.

### Examples

RTL Specification (Verilog):

```
module memory(input vdd, ..);  
  ...  
endmodule
```

RTL Specification (VHDL):

```
entity memory is  
  port (vdd : in std_logic; ..)  
  ..  
end entity
```

UPF specification:

```
create_power_domain mem_pd -elements mem  
connect_supply_net vdd_switchable -ports mem/vdd
```

### Usage Note

When automatic connection semantics are applied, simulation semantics of all the instances whose ports are automatically connected will be disabled. This may display a notification message similar to the following:

```
** Note: top.upf(12): (vopt-9693) Power Aware simulation semantics  
disabled for /testbench/rtl_top/mem
```

It is recommended that you use `vopt -suppress 9693` to suppress this message.

## Supply Nets

This section describes how to use UPF commands with ModelSim to define supply net behavior for Power Aware.

## Resolving Drivers on a Supply Net

Supply nets are often connected to the output of a single switch. However, if you have a design where the output of multiple switches are connected to the same supply net, you need a resolution mechanism to determine the state and voltage of the net, depending on the values supplied by the each of the individual switches.

**Version 1.0 of the UPF Standard** (UPF v1.0) defines the semantics of using the `create_supply_net` command to determine the resolution of different drivers on a supply net. In UPF v1.0, the resolution is mainly dependent on the state and voltage value of the supply network. In particular, the `-resolve` argument provides the following values, which you to select a method of multiple drivers on a supply net (refer to Section 5.1.5):

- `unresolved`
- `one-hot`
- `parallel`

Note that resolution can only be defined on the supply net and not on supply ports. As a result you can have multiple ports driving a supply net, but not multiple supply nets driving a supply port.

### Example

In the following example, ports `p1`, `p2`, and `p3` are driving the resolved supply net, `resol_net`, which has `'one_hot'` resolution specified.

A voltage value and supply state would be driven on `resol_net`, depending on the resolution(`one_hot`) specified and the state of the drivers (`p1`, `p2`, `p3`).

In a case of a error in resolution, the supply net is turned off and voltage value is driven to 0. An error message is displayed that lists the voltages and states of all the drivers.

The following is an example of the error message for `one_hot` and `parallel` resolution respectively.

```
set_scope tb
create_power_domain PD_TOP -elements { top1 } -include_scope
create_supply_port p1 -domain PD_TOP -direction in
create_supply_port p2 -domain PD_TOP -direction in
create_supply_port p3 -domain PD_TOP -direction in
create_supply_net resol_net -domain PD_TOP -resolve one_hot

##### Supply Net Resolution #####
connect_supply_net resol_net -ports p1

connect_supply_net resol_net -ports p2

connect_supply_net resol_net -ports p3
```

```
** Error: (vsim-8928) MSPA_RSLV_ONE_HOT: Time: 20 ns, More than one driver  
is ON for one_hot supply net: /tb/resol_net
```

```
# Drivers are:-
```

```
# /tb/p1: {0 uV, OFF}  
# /tb/p2: {5 uV, ON}  
# /tb/p3: {10 uV, ON}
```

```
# ** Error: (vsim-8927) MSPA_RSLV_PARALLEL: Time: 15 ns, Different  
voltages driven by ON drivers of parallel supply net /tb/resol_net
```

```
# Drivers are:-
```

```
# /tb/p1: {0 uV, OFF}  
# /tb/p2: {5 uV, ON}  
# /tb/p3: {10 uV, ON}
```

## Defining Isolation

Isolation is used to separate signals that originate in a design element with power off from a part of the design that has power on and that can still read the signals from the powered down element. A particular domain may be powered off while another domain is operating in normal mode.

There are two methods for defining an isolation cell.

### Method 1: Isolation is already explicitly present

In this case, the design (in either a RTL or a GL netlist) contains an explicit cell instance that functions as an isolation cell. The UPF file includes a `set_isolation -instance` command that identifies this explicit instance as an isolation cell. In this case:

- No isolation needs to be added
- Power Aware will not insert an additional isolation cell
- Power Aware will not modify the explicit isolation cell that is present (it is assumed that the user-provided isolation cell does what it is supposed to do)

## Method 2: Isolation needs to be added

In this case, you use the `set_isolation` command to provide an isolation strategy (without the `-instance` option). ModelSim then implicitly inserts an isolation cell on any port that satisfies all of the following:

- Matches the criteria defined in the isolation strategy
- Requires isolation because the power state table indicates that the two power domains on either side of the port can be ON/OFF or OFF/ON respectively
- Does not already have an explicit isolation cell present and identified (per Method 1)

By default, if ModelSim does insert an isolation cell, Power Aware simulation will use a built-in behavioral model for isolation. However, you can cause the simulation to insert a different model (when required) by using the `map_isolation_cell` UPF command to identify the isolation model to be used.

---

### Note



To prevent a redundant isolation cell from being inserted on a port, use the `set_isolation -instance` command to identify the instance of the existing isolation cell.

---

## Specifying Isolation Cells

ModelSim reads the `set_isolation` command in the UPF file and identifies ports as candidates for isolation cell insertion. These ports are also dumped into the UPF report file (`report.upf.txt`), as in [Example D-29](#).

### Example D-29. UPF Report File for Isolation Ports (`report.upf.txt`)

```
Isolation Strategy: iso_PD_mid1, File: test.upf(44).
Isolation Supplies:
  power   : /tb/TOP/tb_pow
  ground  : /tb/TOP/mid1_GND_NET
Isolation Control (/tb/TOP/ctrl), Isolation Sense (HIGH), Clamp Value
(1), Location (automatic)

Isolated Signals:
  1. Signal : /tb/TOP/mid1/out2_bot
  2. Signal : /tb/TOP/mid1/out1_bot
```

## Isolation Cell Instances

If you have used the `set_isolation -instance` command in a UPF file to instantiate RTL isolation cells, ModelSim will infer those cells and perform isolation checks on them.



ModelSim automatically infers the right UPF strategy for cells that are not specified in the UPF file. For more information, refer to “[Automatic Detection of Power Management Cells.](#)”

A cell instance is identified as an isolation cell in any of the following cases:

- Instance is specified with -instance argument of set\_isolation command.
- For a GLS design, any of the following is present:

- Synopsys pragma synopsys isolation\_upf.

Example:

```
ISOLOD1BWP trafficWriteEnable_UPF_ISO ( .I(trafficWriteEnable),
.ISO(n16),.Z(n57) ); //synopsys isolation_upf PD_C2_ISS1+PD_C2
```

- Liberty attribute is\_isolation\_cell. Example:

```
cell (ISO_LO) {
    is_isolation_cell : true;
    ...
}
```

- HDL attribute is\_isolation\_cell. Example:

```
(* is_isolation_cell = 1 *)
module ISOCELL ( I, ISO, Z ) ;
    ....
endmodule
```

- Cell in accordance with map\_isolation\_cell UPF command. Example:

```
UPF Command : map_isolation_cell mem_ctrl_iso_0 -domain PD_mem_ctrl
-lib_cells {ISO_LO}
Instantiation in hdl : ISO_LO addr_0 ( .I(n158), .ISO(n174),
.Z(address[0]) );
```

- Instance name in accordance with name\_format UPF command. Example:

```
UPF Command : name_format -isolation_prefix "MY_ISO_"
-isolation_suffix "UPF_ISO"
Instantiation in hdl : SEN_OR2_4 MY_ISO_t_state_21__UPF_ISO
(.A1 ( n151 ) , .A2 ( n354 ) , .X ( t_state[21] ) );
```

## Limitations

If isolation is required and is not present (and identified with `set_isolation -instance`), then Power Aware simulation effectively inserts an isolation cell.

The current Power Aware architecture implements isolation by *actually* inserting a cell—an instance of a behavioral model for isolation—into the design where isolation is required. However, ports on an isolation cell inserted this way have a limitation of not supporting enum types.

For ports of type enum, Power Aware reverts to the implementation approach used in previous releases. In that approach, an isolation cell is not *actually* inserted into the design. Instead, internal mechanisms (such as the force command) make an existing design port (highconn or lowconn) behave as if isolation were present.

Note that the isolation effect of these two approaches is identical—you will see exactly the same results in reports and in the GUI. The only difference is that the new architecture shows explicit instances of isolation cells that have been added to the design.

## Defining Retention

To define retention registers in a power domain and set the corresponding save and restore signals for the retention registers, you use the `set_retention` command in your UPF file. In particular, you can use the following arguments (which are supported only in UPF v2.0) to define your retention strategy:

- `-retention_supply_set`— Defines the supply set used to power the logic inferred by the `<retention_name>` strategy.
- `-no_retention` — Storage elements specified by this argument are prevented from having retention capability.
- `-use_retention_as_primary` — Specifies that the storage element and its output are powered by the retention supply.

### `-retention_supply_set`

#### Description

This argument defines the supply set used to power the register holding the retained value.

Note the following cases:

- If you have specified both retention power and retention ground nets, using this command creates an implicit retention supply set and is used with the specified strategy. The retention power net serves the power function in the retention supply set and the retention ground net serves the ground function in the retention supply set.

- If you have specified the retention power net but not the retention ground net, then the domain's primary supply sets ground function is used as the retention ground.
- If you have specified the retention ground net but not the retention power net, then the domain's primary supply sets power function is used as the retention power.

Note that the power of the retention cell is preserved (an extra port RETPWR (Retention Power) is added to the retention models).

Whenever the power of a retention cell (RETPWR) goes down, the value stored in retention cell gets corrupted, and the 'X' value is restored when restore signal is triggered.

## Example

Consider the following logic added in a retention model:

```
// store x in RETPWRDOWN
always @(negedge RETPWR)
begin
    -> pa_store_x ;
end
```

An extra port RETPWR has been added in the Power Aware retention models.

Whenever you use your own retention models using the [map\\_retention\\_cell](#) UPF command:

- For a user-defined model with RETPWR port and corresponding logic—Behavior will be in accordance with the RETPWR logic.
- For a user-defined model without a RETPWR port — A warning is issued during the vsim simulation. For example:

```
# ** Warning: (vsim-PA-8944) Retention Model : 'MyRetModel' does not have
Port 'RETPWR'. Ignoring it.
# Region: /mspa_top/blk0/inst0_MyRetModel
```

## -no\_retention

### Description

This argument disables retention on specified storage elements.

### Example

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tbl
create_power_domain PD_TOP -elements { top1/bot1/tdsig}
create_power_domain PD_TOP2 -elements { top1/q1 }
create_power_domain PD_TOP3 -elements { top1/}
...
set_domain_supply_net PD_TOP -primary_power_net PD_TOP_primary_power -
primary_ground_net GND_net
```

```
set_domain_supply_net PD_TOP2 -primary_power_net PD_TOP_primary_power2 -
primary_ground_net GND_net
set_domain_supply_net PD_TOP3 -primary_power_net PD_TOP_primary_power3 -
primary_ground_net GND_net
create_power_switch PD_TOP_sw \
    -domain PD_TOP \
    -output_supply_port { out_sw_PD_TOP PD_TOP_primary_power } \
    -input_supply_port { in_sw_PD_TOP VDD_net } \
    -control_port { ctrl_sw_PD_TOP pg } \
    -on_state { normal_working in_sw_PD_TOP {ctrl_sw_PD_TOP } } \
    -off_state { off_state {!ctrl_sw_PD_TOP} }
...
set_retention PD_TOP_retention3 -domain PD_TOP -retention_power_net
VDD_net -elements { top1/bot1/tdsig[0][1] } -no_retention
set_retention_control PD_TOP_retention3 -domain PD_TOP -save_signal { ret3
posedge } -restore_signal { ret1 negedge }

set_retention PD_TOP_retention2 -domain PD_TOP -retention_power_net
VDD_net -elements { top1/bot1/tdsig }
set_retention_control PD_TOP_retention2 -domain PD_TOP -save_signal { ret2
posedge } -restore_signal { ret1 negedge }

set_retention PD_TOP_retention1 -domain PD_TOP -retention_power_net
VDD_net -elements { top1/bot1/tdsig[0][0] }
set_retention_control PD_TOP_retention1 -domain PD_TOP -save_signal { ret1
posedge } -restore_signal { ret1 negedge }
...
```

As a result of this UPF command, no retention strategy is applied to:

```
top1/bot1/tdsig[0][1]
```

## Reports

```
report.upf.txt
-----
Power Domain: PD_TOP, File: ./src/bitwise_1/test.upf(7).
Creation Scope: /tbl
Primary Supplies:
    power : /tbl/PD_TOP_primary_power
    ground : /tbl/GND_net
Power Switch: PD_TOP_sw, File: ./src/bitwise_1/test.upf(34).
Output Supply port:
    out_sw_PD_TOP(/tbl/PD_TOP_primary_power)
Input Supply ports:
    1. in_sw_PD_TOP(/tbl/VDD_net)
Control Ports:
    1. ctrl_sw_PD_TOP(/tbl/pg)
Switch States:
    1. normal_working(ON) : (ctrl_sw_PD_TOP )
    2. off_state(OFF) : (!ctrl_sw_PD_TOP)
Retention Strategy: PD_TOP_retention3, File:
./src/bitwise_1/test.upf(58).
Retention Supplies:
    power : /tbl/VDD_net
```

```

        ground : /tb1/GND_net
    No Retention
    Retention SAVE (/tb1/ret3), Retention Sense (posedge)
    Retention RESTORE (/tb1/ret1), Retention Sense (negedge)
    Retention Strategy: PD_TOP_retention2, File:
./src/bitwise_1/test.upf(61).
    Retention Supplies:
        power : /tb1/VDD_net
        ground : /tb1/GND_net
    Retention SAVE (/tb1/ret2), Retention Sense (posedge)
    Retention RESTORE (/tb1/ret1), Retention Sense (negedge)
    Retention Strategy: PD_TOP_retention1, File:
./src/bitwise_1/test.upf(64).
    Retention Supplies:
        power : /tb1/VDD_net
        ground : /tb1/GND_net
    Retention SAVE (/tb1/ret1), Retention Sense (posedge)
    Retention RESTORE (/tb1/ret1), Retention Sense (negedge)

```

```

-----
Power Domain: PD_BOT, File: ./src/bitwise_1/test.upf(70).
...

```

report.mspa.txt

```

-----
----- ModelSim Power Aware Report File -----
-----

```

```

Total ( tb1 )
upf_retention_ret # 1
upf_retention_sr # 12
NPM_FF # 12
NPM_LA # 2
OUTPUT # 38
...

```

```

-----
PD_TOP sub_total ( /tb1/top1/bot1 )
upf_retention_ret # 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[0] 1
upf_retention_sr # 12
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[2] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[3] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[4] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[5] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[6] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[7] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[8] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[9] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[10] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[11] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[12] 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[13] 1
NPM_FF # 1
/tb1/top1/bot1/tdsig[1] 1
-----

```

```

PD_TOP2 sub_total ( /tb1/top1 )
OUTPUT # 1
/tb1/top1/q1 1

```

```
-----
...
PD_TOP3 sub_total ( /tb1/top1 )
NPM_FF # 7
  /tb1/top1/d1[6:4] 3
  /tb1/top1/d1[3:0] 4
OUTPUT # 11
  /tb1/top1/out_buf 1
  /tb1/top1/out_reg 1
  /tb1/top1/out_lat 1
  /tb1/top1/out_uniso 1
  /tb1/top1/d2 7
-----
-- NPM_FF => Denotes all Non Power Management Flip Flops of a Power
Domain.
-- NPM_LA => Denotes all Non Power Management Latches of a Power Domain.
-- OUTPUT => Denotes all outputs and power signals, which are not
sequential elements, of a Power Domain.
```

## -use\_retention\_as\_primary

### Description

This argument powers the storage element and the output drivers of the register using the retention supply.

### Example

```
upf_version 2.0
set_scope tb
create_power_domain pd_aon -include_scope
...
connect_supply_net vdd_net -ports { vdd_port }
connect_supply_net gnd_net -ports { gnd_port }
create_supply_set pd_aon_ss \
  -function { power vdd_net } \
  -function { ground gnd_net }
...
#####
# Retention Strategy for pd
#####
set_retention pd_retention1 -domain pd -save_signal { ret posedge } -
restore_signal { ret negedge } -elements { top_vh } -
use_retention_as_primary
map_retention_cell pd_retention1 -domain pd -lib_model_name
upf_retention_ret -lib_cell_type FF_CKHI
associate_supply_set pd_aon_ss -handle pd.pd_retention1.supply
...
```

### Report

```
report.mspa.txt
-----
```

```

----- ModelSim Power Aware Report File -----
-----
Total ( tb )
  upf_retention_ret # 2
  NPM_FF # 1
  NPM_LA # 3
  OUTPUT # 3
-----
pd sub_total ( /tb/top_vh /tb/top_vl )
  upf_retention_ret # 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_regvl 1
  NPM_LA # 2
  /tb/top_vh/q_latvh 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_latvl 1
  OUTPUT # 2
  /tb/top_vh/q_combvh 1
  /tb/top_vl/q_combvl 1
-----
pd.pd_retention1.use_retention_as_primary sub_total ( /tb/top_vh )
  upf_retention_ret # 1
  /tb/top_vh/q_regvh 1
-----
pd_aon sub_total ( /tb/top_aon )
  NPM_FF # 1
  /tb/top_aon/q_regvl 1
  NPM_LA # 1
  /tb/top_aon/q_latvl 1
  OUTPUT # 1
  /tb/top_aon/q_combvl 1
-----
-- NPM_FF => Denotes all Non Power Management Flip Flops of a Power
Domain.
-- NPM_LA => Denotes all Non Power Management Latches of a Power Domain.
-- OUTPUT => Denotes all outputs and power signals, which are not
sequential elements, of a Power Domain.

```



# Appendix E

## Power Configuration File Reference

---

In addition to the UPF format (see [UPF Commands and Reference](#)), Mentor also supports a format for specifying the power intent of a design that is referred to as Power Configuration File (PCF).

### Power Specification File

To perform Power Aware verification, you need to provide a power specification file that identifies the low-power specification of the design. A power specification file is analogous to a standard delay file (SDF) used for annotating timing and timing check information into a simulation.

Using a power specification file is the key to the verification flow using Power Aware. This file provides the following information required to overlay verification with the power control network and Power Aware functionality:

- Power regions, voltage domains, and power islands
- Retention sequential models, their type, and the regions they are in (including nodebug, encrypted, and protected regions)
- State and output corruption behavior in power-down situations
- Power control signals and the portions of the design they control

The power specification file is designed to capture all Power Aware characteristics of the design at the RTL (or higher) in a compact form that can be easily used by the simulator.

### Formats

This power specification file can be written in either of the following formats:

- Unified Power Format (UPF) — A standardized set of low-power design specifications for use throughout design, analysis, verification, and implementation. This is the recommended format for low-power specification for Power Aware simulations. File format adheres to v1.0 of the UPF standard by default. In addition, Mentor also supports portions of v2.0 (IEEE Std1801-2009). Refer to [UPF Commands and Reference](#) for more information on UPF.

- Power Configuration File (PCF) — A preliminary file format specific to ModelSim that was developed to meet the specific needs of various customers and semiconductor companies. Refer to [Power Configuration File Reference](#) for more information on PCF.

## Using a PCF as Part of Power Aware Verification

You can use a power specification file written as a Power Configuration File (PCF) as part of a Power Aware analysis at the RTL level as follows:

1. Code the functional design using normal RTL coding guidelines. Specifically, the power control network is not wired through the RTL functional network.
2. Model the power management blocks, including the definition of the power control signals. These signals either indicate the on/off status of power to specific power islands or flag the storing and restoring of state information.
3. Use the PCF to specify how the power control network overlays connect to the functional network.
4. Use a Power Aware library of Verilog models provided by the silicon (or library) vendor. The library models trigger relevant events for the simulator so that the simulator can modify the run-time behavior of the RTL design to corrupt state and outputs and store or restore state values based on power control network activity. For more information refer to [Guidelines for Writing HDL Models](#)
5. Use the PCF to map the Power Aware models to sequential elements in the design.
6. Use the Power Aware model library, it is presumed to be precompiled as it does not change.
7. Compile the RTL design normally.
8. Simulate the design (see [Standard Flow For RTL](#)). When the design is simulated, the simulator will take the PCF as input as well as the compiled design.
9. Proceed with the simulation normally, as the test bench triggers power down signals for various power islands while save and restore occur as required. The purpose of the verification is to ensure the design functions correctly within the dynamic context of power islands being turned off and on.

# PCF Syntax and Contents

This section describes the syntax and semantics of the PCF, using Backus-Naur Format (BNF) grammar to specify the syntax.

## Basic PCF Statement Types

The PCF consists of header and power or context statements. The header statement must be the first statement in the PCF. Power and context statements can be intermixed. Context statements apply to all statements that follow the context statement unless and until overridden by a subsequent context statement.

## Statement Termination

You should terminate all statements with a semicolon (;). However, for backward compatibility with earlier PCF formats, a statement may be terminated by a new line (CRLF).

When using a new line to terminate a statement, use the backslash (\) character to indicate line continuation instead of termination immediately prior to the new line.

Only one form of statement termination can be used in a simulation session.

```
stmt_end ::=  
    ;  
    | CRLF
```

## Header Statement

The header statement is mandatory for PCF version 2.0 or later. It is an error if the PCF version is not specified or if there is no header statement prior to the occurrence of the first power or context statement.

Future versions of the PCF may define additional header information. That is why the header statement is defined as a comma-separated list of keyword-value pairs that are specified only once in a PCF file.

```
header_statement ::=  
HEADER keyword_value_pair { , keyword_value_pair }  
    stmt_end  
  
keyword_value_pair ::=  
    ( keyword = value )  
  
keyword ::=  
    VERSION  
    | SEPARATOR  
    | STMT_TERM  
    | ... (user or vendor defined)
```

### Note



Currently, the only information defined in the header statement is the PCF version number and separator character. The verification tool provider will specify which versions numbers they support. Future versions of the PCF specification may identify additional keywords and the values associated with them.

---

- **VERSION** — (Required) This keyword-value pair identifies the PCF specification version number and must be the first keyword specified in the header statement as this information can determine whether or not subsequent keywords are recognizable and supported. The version number will be of the form:

`<positive>.<natural>`

Vendors may not extend or add to the version number as it applies to the version of the PCF specification and not to a vendor's tool version.

- **SEPARATOR** — (Optional) This keyword-value pair identifies the separator character used to separate one scope level from the next. If not specified, the separator character is defined by the tool processing the PCF or, if the tool defines no default, it is the slash character (/). Although defined by a string value, the separator character string value must be exactly one character in length.
- **STMT\_TERM** — (Optional) This keyword-value pair identifies the statement termination. In PCF 1.0, the default statement termination is CRLF. For PCF 2.0 or later, the default statement termination is semicolon. The only permissible values are "CRLF" or ";".
- **VENDOR\_<string>** — (Optional) This keyword-value pair specifies a vendor's tool-specific entry.

Vendors may define their own tool-specific header information. Vendor-specific information must be tagged by the prefix "VENDOR\_" in the keyword. Vendor-specific header information cannot be used to change the PCF syntactic or semantic information as defined in this specification. It can be used for general informational purposes, for example to identify the tool and tool version that generated or is targeted for consuming the PCF. Vendor-specific keyword values must be double quoted strings.

### Example

This example shows the use of a secondary prefix ("MGC") that identifies the specific vendor, in this case Mentor Graphics Corporation. Such keyword naming conventions are encouraged as they facilitate the ability of tools to easily identify header information that has meaning to them.

```
HEADER ( VERSION = "2.0" ),  
        (SEPARATOR = "/" ),
```

```
(VENDOR_MGC_SOURCE = "PX"),
(VENDOR_MGC_SOURCE_VERSION = "2006.05") ;
```

## Context Statements

By setting the current design scope as the implicit prefix to all instance paths, you can significantly reduce the amount of text required in the PCF. Context statements provide the ability to define specific context items that apply to all power (and context) statements that follow until another context statement makes a subsequent change.

```
context_statement ::=
  scope_statement
  | variable_statement
  | include_statement
  | corruption_map_statement
  | corruption_extent
```

## Scope Statement

The scope statement sets the current scope context within the hierarchy of the design being verified (including the test bench). All relative paths used in subsequent context or power statements will be equivalent to an absolute path starting with the current scope and proceeding through the relative path specified in the statement. The most recent scope statement shall apply to each relative path specified in the PCF.

```
scope_statement ::=
  SCOPE instance_path stmt_end

instance_path ::=
  relative_path
  | absolute_path

relative_path ::=
  hdl_identifier { separator_character hdl_identifier }

absolute_path ::=
  separator_character relative_path
```

Another application may provide a mechanism, external to the PCF, to specify information equivalent to a scope statement being specified immediately after the header statement. This usage model supports the use of the same PCF with different test benches or in block level as well as chip level verification.

## Examples

```
SCOPE /root/dut ; -- Set initial scope to DUT

SCOPE memctrl/arbiter ; -- Set scope to memctrl.arbiter
-- instance down design hierarchy
-- from current scope.
```

## Variable Statement

Variable statements are used to store frequently used values. The values are treated as untyped and are applied to the context specified and then interpreted. They are very similar to UNIX environment variables or macros. An example usage would be to define a path to a common level of hierarchy from which many instance, signal, etc. paths will then be defined.

```
variable_statement ::=  
    $identifier = value stmt_end
```

- `$<identifier>` — The lexical form of the identifier adheres to the rules for identifiers in Verilog (IEEE Std 1364-2005). The identifier must be prefixed by the dollar sign (\$) symbol in both the specification of its value and the referencing of that value. No white space is permitted between the \$ symbol and the identifier.
- `value` — a double quoted ("...") string.

### Example

```
$memctrl_scope = "/top/dut/memory_unit/memctrl" ;  
SCOPE $memctrl_scope/arbiter ;  
  
$inst_path = "top/pd1/inst1/inst11";  
POWER PDINST11 $inst_path/cell1,  
    ($inst_path/gl obal_vdd1 &  
    $inst_path/vd1/local_vdd_11);
```

## Include Statement

The ability to textually include another PCF file is provided through the include statement. The include statement allows PCF files to be created on a hierarchical or power island or voltage domain basis. It also allows the specification of common, reusable information in a separate file for easier maintenance. For example, the data type corruption mapping information can be specified once and then included in any design PCF that uses that specific mapping.

```
include_statement ::=  
    include filepath_name stmt_end
```

- `filepath_name` — a simple file name, a relative file path name or an absolute file path name. Simple filenames will be searched in the current working directory of the tool processing the PCF. Relative file path names will be searched using the current working directory of the tool as the starting point for the search. Absolute file path names are searched without regard to the current working directory.

The *filepath\_name* must conform to the UNIX file path name convention.

It is an error if the specified include file does not exist.

### Example

```
include corruption_map.pcf ; -- corruption_map.pcf
```

```

-- must exist in current
-- working directory

include memctrl/memctrl.pcf ; -- Search in memctrl
-- subdirectory of
-- current working dir

include /u/home/tsmith/projs/memctrl/memctrl.pcf ;
-- Absolute path to a PCF file to include

```

## Corruption Extent Statement

By default, corruption semantics are applied only to what has been specified. Frequently, corruption in power down situations should be applied more extensively. The corruption extent statement allows the specification of the extent that corruption is applied in power-down situations.

```

corruption_extent ::=
    CEXTENT = extent_keyword stmt_end

extent_keyword ::=
    OUTS_SEQ_AND_WIRES
    | OUTS_AND_SEQ
    | OUTPUTS

```

- **OUTS\_SEQ\_AND\_WIRES** — corrupts registers and signals that are driven by logic which is powered down.
- **OUTS\_AND\_SEQ** — corrupts output ports and sequential elements within the power domain.
- **OUTPUTS** — corrupts only the output ports of a power domain.

## Power Statements

Power statements define voltage domains, power islands, mapping of inferred registers and latches to Power Aware models and corruption behavior.

```

power_statement ::=
    power_control statement
    | power_model_mapping

```

## Power Control Statement

The power control statement defines the power islands by mapping a power control signal to the design power elements to which it applies.

```

power_control_statement ::=
    POWER tag [-osw | -os | -o] region_definitions , ( boolean_expr )
    [ retention_specification ]
    [ POWER_VDD voltage_specification ]
    stmt_end

```

- tag — a name without any white space (spaces, tabs, etc.) that provides a descriptive handle or identifier for the power island or power control mapping being defined.
- [-osw | -os | -o] — command options that allow you to override the global corruption extent of the vopt -pa\_ce command for specific power domains.
  - osw — sets the corruption extent to outputs and sequential and non-sequential wires.
  - os — sets the corruption extent to outputs and sequential elements.
  - o — sets the corruption extent to outputs only.

For example, you can use -o to define a specific power domain with non-synthesizable RTL to prevent register/latch detection, even though you the command line specifies vopt -pa\_ce=os.

- region\_definitions — a list of signal, instance, and process definitions that allow the declaration of a power island by specifying various combinations of elements which are controlled by the power island on/off state. Refer to the section [Region Definitions](#) for detailed information.
- boolean\_expr — a Verilog boolean expression. When the expression evaluates TRUE, power to the specified elements in rtl\_region\_definition is powered ON. When it evaluates FALSE, power to the specified elements in rtl\_region\_definition is OFF.
- retention\_specification — (optional) The power control statement may optionally specify the signal(s) used to control retention behavior throughout the power island defined by the power control statement. The retention specification is described in the section [Retention Statement](#).
- POWER\_VDD voltage\_specification — (optional) To facilitate a concise specification in the situation where the voltage domain and the power island are the same, the power control statement may optionally specify the operating voltages for the power island/voltage domain. The voltage specification is described in the section [Voltage Domains](#).

## Region Definitions

The region definitions are a list of signal, instance and process definitions. This will allow declaring a power island by specifying various combinations of elements which are controlled by the power island on/off state.

```
region_definitions ::=
  region_definition { , region_definition }

region_definition ::=
  signal_definition
  | instance_definition
  | process_definition
```

```
signal_definition ::=
  -s hdl_path

instance_definition ::=
  [ -i ][ -nr ] hdl_path

process_definition ::=
  -p hdl_path
```

In each region definition, the HDL path is relative to the context that has previously been set through a SCOPE statement. The path must terminate at an object or scope appropriate for the type of definition (a signal or port, block instance or process instance).

- Signal Definition
  - **-s** — specifies that the given signal (*hdl\_path*) is part of the power island and must be corrupted on power down. The signal is the lowest level of granularity for power region definition.

- Instance Definition

Instance regions are recursive by default. That is, the corruption includes the specified instance and extends to any additional instances contained within the design hierarchy sub-tree rooted at the specified instance through the lowest leaves of that sub-tree.

You can target individual instances within generate using two underscore characters (\_\_) instead of square brackets, [ ].

- **-i** — For block instances, the argument **-i** is optional, since it is the only region definition that does not require an argument to identify the kind of region. It is recommended that you specify the **-i** argument for clarity.
- **-nr** — If the corruption should not extend beyond the immediately specified instance, then you can specify the **-nr** argument, since **-nr** specifies non-recursive corruption.

---

**Note**

The **-nr** argument applies to all instance names that match a regular expression.

---

The **-nr** argument is meaningful only during 'all' corruption: CEXTENT = ALL. When you specify this argument, the simulator applies the corruption only to the inferred registers and latches contained in the root of the sub-tree defined by the instance specification and not to the instances declared below that.

Corruption of instance outputs will be applied to the outputs of all the instances listed in the POWER statements. In the case of an instance declared without **-nr**, output corruption will be applied to the outputs of the top of the instance and not to the instances below that. That is, recursive application of corruption applies only to inferred registers and latches—never to outputs.

- Process Definition

To identify specific processes within a block instance and not all processes within a block instance, the PCF supports the specification of processes individually.

- **-p** — indicates that the region definition applies to only the specified process. The HDL path identifies the relative hierarchical path to the process's label.

The sequential elements in the process and the outputs (drivers) of the process will be corrupted. If two processes in one single instance are controlled by different power control signals, the sequential elements of the different processes need to be corrupted separately.

### Example

```
POWER PD0
-s top/pd11/s1,
-nr top/pd11/w11,
-p top/pd11/c111/p1,
top/pd11/c112,
(top/global_vdd_1 & top/vd1/local_vdd_11) ;
```

A power island named PD0 is defined by the signals *top/global\_vdd\_1* bit-wise anded with *top/vd1/local\_vdd\_11*. In other words, the power is ON for PD0 only when both *vdd\_1* and *vdd\_11* are on (1). When the power for PD0 is off, the following are corrupted:

- The signal *top/pd11/s1*
- The block instance *top/pd11/w11* (inferred registers, latches and outputs)
- The inferred registers or latches for the process *top/pd11/c112*

### Example

```
POWER VD1 top/vd1 , (top/global/vdd1)
```

The instance *top/vd1* is controlled by power control signal *top/global\_vdd1*.

If corruption extent is set to ALL, then the outputs of *top/vd1* are corrupted when *top/global/vdd1* is 0 as are inferred registers and latches in *top/vd1* and all sub-blocks below *top/vd1*.

### Example

```
POWER PD1
top/pd11 ,
(top/global_vdd1 & top/vd1/local_vdd_12);

POWER signal_always_on
-s top/pd11/out1, 1;
```

With this power specification file, the output *top/pd11/out1* will not be corrupted when the power for power domain PD1 goes off.

## Example

### Note



This example describes the combinatorial logic (powered by *top/VDD1*) which is an output *out1* of an instance *m2\_00* which is powered from VDD2.

```
POWER PD1
-s top/m2_00/out1,
(top/VDD1);

POWER PD0
top/m2_00,
(top/VDD2);
```

This means if the VDD1 goes off, the 'out1' needs to go 'X', but VDD2 has no effect on the 'out1'.

## Example

```
POWER PD0
-s top/pd11/s1,
-nr top/pd11/w11,
-p top/pd11/c111/p1,
top/pd11/c112,
(top/global_vdd_1 & top/vd1/local_vdd_11)
RETENTION top/vd1/save top/vd1/restore
POWER_VDD {0.5} ;
```

## Example

```
POWER PD1          -- Process p1 is in a different
-p /top/m2_00/p1,  -- power island
(top/VDD1);

POWER PD2          -- Than process p2
-p /top/m2_00/p2,  -- But both exist in the same block
(top/VDD2);

module m2(i1, i2, i3, i4, iso, a1, a2, clock, reset)
output a 1, a2;
reg a11, a21;
input i1, i2, i3, i4;
input clk, reset;
.....
// Belong to PD1
always @(i1 or i2 or i3)
begin : p1
.....
a11 <= i1 & i2 & i3;
.....
end
```

```
end

// Belong to PD2
always @(i1 or i2 or i3)
begin : p2
    ...
    a21 <= (i1 | i2 | i3);
    ...
end
.....
endmodule
```

## Power Model Mapping Statement

The mapping statement defines how an inferred register or latch signal or variable in the design maps to a model from the Power Aware model library that defines its run-time behavior.

Need to allow mapping of a Power Aware model to all inferred sequential items (regs/latches) in a scope or to specific signals (whole signals, not bit, part or selected elements of a signal) in a scope. Wildcard matching will apply.

```
power_model_mapping ::=
    MAP model_module_name pacell_spec
        ret_ctrl_signals,
        region_definitions stmt_end

ret_ctrl_signals ::=
    ret_signal_name
    | ret_save_sig_name ret_restore_sig_name

pacell_spec ::=
    pacell_type [ interface_information ]

pacell_type ::=
    FF_CKHI
    | FF_CKLO
    | FF_CKFR
    | LA_ENHI
    | LA_ENLO
    | LA_ENFR
    | ANY_CKHI
    | ANY_CKLO
    | ANY_CKFR
    | RETMEM
    | NON_RETMEM

interface_information ::=
    ( named_parameter_assignment
      {, named_parameter_assignment } )
```

- **model\_module\_name** — specifies a Verilog module that defines the Power Aware (retention) behavior that will be mapped to the regions specified by **region\_definition**. Normal Verilog library search will be used to locate the module (e.g., `-L my_lib`). It is an error if the specified module cannot be found or, if found, does not conform to the

modeling guidelines for Power Aware models. For more information refer to [Guidelines for Writing HDL Models](#).

- `ret_ctrl_signals` — specifies either a single signal name that will be connected to the RET port of the Power Aware model, or a pair of retention signal names that are connected to the SAVE and RESTORE ports of the Power Aware model. For more information refer to the chapter [Guidelines for Writing HDL Models](#).
- `region_definitions` — determines which regions, defined in the section [Region Definitions](#), shall be supported in the power model mapping statement with the following semantics for each region:
  - `Signal` — The specified signal shall infer a sequential element (register or latch) that will be mapped to the Power Aware model. A warning shall be issued if a sequential element has not been inferred for the specified signal. An error shall be issued if the `pacell_type` is specified and the Power Aware cell type inferred for the specified signal does not match.
  - `Instance` — All sequential elements inferred within the instance will be mapped to the specified Power Aware model. By default, the mapping is recursive to all child instances of the specified instance. The `-nr` switch may be used to specify non-recursive mapping to the instance only (not to any child instances). A warning shall be issued if `pacell_type` is specified and no inferred sequential elements of that type are present in the region.
  - `Process` — All sequential elements inferred within the process will be mapped to the specified Power Aware model. A warning shall be issued if there are no inferred sequential elements for the specified process. A warning shall be issued if `pacell_type` is specified and no inferred sequential elements of that type are present in the region.
- `pacell_type` — specifies the type of inferred sequential cell to which the mapping statement applies.

Specification of the Power Aware cell type avoids unintentional mapping of the incorrect Power Aware model to an inferred sequential element of a different type while permitting all types of cells to be inferred in the same region definition and PCF coverage of all inferred sequential elements with as few power model mapping statements as possible. When the cell type is specified, then only inferred sequential elements that match that type are mapped to the Power Aware model specified in the mapping statement. The cell types are defined as follows:

- `FF_CKHI` — Inferred registers (flip-flops) active on the positive edge of the clock signal.
- `FF_CKLO` — Inferred registers active on the negative edge of the clock signal.
- `FF_CKFR` — All inferred registers regardless of the edge sensitivity of the clock signal.

- LA\_ENHI — Inferred latches active when the enable signal is high.
- LA\_ENLO — Inferred latches active when the enable signal is low.
- LA\_ENFR — All inferred latches regardless of the level sensitivity of the enable signal.
- ANY\_CKHI — Generically matches any inferred sequential element (register or latch) that is active on the posedge of a clock or high level of an enable signal. That is, this cell type is equivalent to two mapping statements that are identical except for cell type where one statement cell type is FF\_CKHI and the cell type of the other equivalent mapping statement is LA\_ENHI.
- ANY\_CKLO — Generically matches any inferred sequential element that is active on the engaged of a clock or low level of an enable signal. That is, this cell type is equivalent to two mapping statements that are identical except for cell type where one statement cell type is FF\_CKLO and the cell type of the other equivalent mapping statement is LA\_ENLO.
- ANY\_CKFR — Generically matches any inferred sequential element without regard to edge or level sensitivity. A mapping statement specifying this cell type is equivalent to four mapping statements that are identical except for the cell type. The 1st equivalent statement has cell type FF\_CKHI, the 2nd equivalent statement has cell type FF\_CKLO, the 3rd equivalent statement has cell type LA\_ENHI and the 4th equivalent statement has cell type LA\_ENLO.
- RETMEM — Matches an inferred memory to a model that will determine under what conditions the memory contents would be corrupted. If the pacell type is RETMEM, then the region definition must specify a signal (-s <signal\_for\_memory\_contents>). It is an error if any other region definition is specified.
- NON\_RETMEM — Matches an inferred memory to corruption only semantics (memory contents are always corrupted in power down situations). In the case of NON\_RETMEM pacell type, the model module name must indicate the built-in corruption model bi\_nonret\_memory. The builtin corruption model applies the corruption value as governed by the corruption map in effect for that scope.
- interface\_information — (optional) The pacell\_spec can optionally specify a named mapping of power control signals to the ports of the PA model. This allows the names of the signals in the design to differ from the names of the pins on the PA cell. The syntax used is straight from the Verilog 1364 LRM for named parameter assignment. The actual may be a simple name, a hierarchical name, a bit or part select or struct (record) element selection.

During verification, the Power Aware behavior is mapped from the specified Power Aware model to all inferred sequential elements matching the cell type in order to determine when to save and restore the state (or specified corruption value) of the sequential element according to the semantics defined in the PA Verification Guidelines for Power Aware Modeling.

## Mapping Statement Precedence

The general precedence ordering defined in section [Rule Precedence](#) applies when multiple mapping statements refer to the same region. Specifically, the precedence for mapping statements is as follows:

- A mapping to an instance lower in the design hierarchy takes precedence over a mapping to an instance of a parent scope in the hierarchy.
- A mapping to a process takes precedence over a mapping applied to a parent instance scope.
- A mapping to a signal takes precedence over either a process or instance mapping applied to a parent scope.
- If two or more mapping statements map to the same region and the same Power Aware cell type but map to different retention models, then the first mapping statement is used and a warning message issued.
- The precedence of Power Aware cell types is as follows from highest to lowest precedence:
  - a. Clock/enable specific and sequential element specific types (FF\_CKHI, FF\_CKLO, LA\_ENHI, LA\_ENLO)
  - b. Clock/enable free, sequential element specific types (FF\_CKFR, LA\_ENFR).
  - c. Clock/enable specific, sequential element generic types (ANY\_CKHI, ANY\_CKLO).
  - d. Clock/enable free, sequential element generic type (ANY\_CKFR).

The default mapping for an inferred latch is to LA\_ENHI. This default mapping is considered only under the following conditions:

- The enable condition for latches may be complex whether the latch is intentional or unintentional. For enable conditions that are not simply low or high values such as an equality expression, e.g, `en_cond = "101"`, the mapping will be made to an LA\_ENHI model (if such a mapping is specified) where the true condition is considered high.
- For latches inferred from a typically unintentional situation, such as the failure to assign all outputs in all branches of a process, the inferred latch will be mapped to a LA\_ENHI Power Aware type.
- If there is an ambiguity as to which latch Power Aware type to map an inferred latch, it will be mapped to LA\_ENHI.

The power model mapping statement may be terminated by a CRLF or by a semicolon. If terminated by a CRLF, then line continuation must be used if a CRLF is inserted in the middle of the statement. Semicolon termination is encouraged as CRLF is provided primarily for backward compatibility.

## Specifying Default Model Mappings

A likely scenario is for a design to use a single technology library from a single vendor. In this situation, repeating the model mapping specifics repeatedly for multiple parts of the design becomes excessively redundant. The `DEFAULT_MAP` statement is provided for the purpose of defining default mappings of Power Aware models to various Power Aware cell types. To increase the usefulness of the default mapping statements, their lifetimes are defined to extend to the context (scope) they are defined within. To allow a global set of default mappings together with locally overridden mappings, the default mapping statements conform to the precedence rules defined in the sections [Rule Precedence](#) and [Mapping Statement Precedence](#). Each default mapping statement is independent of other default mapping statements defined within the same scope. This allows the default mapping for one type of Power Aware cell to be overridden in a nested context while other default mappings are not. Furthermore, a [Power Model Mapping Statement](#) overrides any default mapping that might otherwise apply.

```
DEFAULT_MAP model_module_name : pacell_type  
    stmt_end
```

A warning will result if a default mapping within a context (scope) creates an ambiguity with another default mapping within that same context. In such ambiguous situations, the first default mapping will be used and subsequent default mappings ignored.

## Retention Statement

Normally, the [Power Control Statement](#) will specify the retention control signal(s) for an entire power island. However, to provide the ability for a power island to have more than one set of retention control signals as well as the flexibility to specify retention control signals separate from the power control statement and the default model mappings, the retention statement is provided. The retention statement may be paired with the use of default mappings to specify the information that is region-specific for inferred sequential elements. Specifically, the retention control signals that are specific to a region are specified so they can be connected to the Power Aware models associated with the default mapping to inferred sequential elements.

```
retention_statement ::=  
    retention_specification, region_definitions  
    stmt_end  
  
retention_specification ::=  
    RETENTION ret_ctrl_signals
```

The retention control signals specified must match the Power Aware model that is mapped to the inferred sequential elements. The [Guidelines for Writing HDL Models](#) allows the use of one or two retention control signals.

## Corruption Semantics

Corruption occurs on power down. Corruption can be applied to state variables (inferred registers and latches) and to the outputs of a block. The corruption of inferred registers and latches and outputs results in a change in the current value of these signal objects in the simulation to the corruption value. No events are propagated as a result in these changes in values. That is, corruption shall not result in the activation of any processes sensitive to the state variables (if signals) or outputs that are corrupted.

Upon restoration of a retained value for inferred registers and latches, the current value of these signal objects will be changed and events are propagated to ensure that the restored state is propagated to outputs. Only inferred registers and latches may have retained values restored. The restored values are specified by the Power Aware model mapped by the PCF to the inferred registers and latches. For more information, refer to [Guidelines for Writing HDL Models](#).

## Voltage Domains

Voltage domains may be specified along with power islands. There are 2 key pieces of information for a voltage domain:

- Whether power is on or off. This information is already specified by the power control statement.
- The voltage level or range of levels under which the domain operates.

Voltage domain statements are optional. Whereas power control statements specify power islands and retention specifications along with model mappings specify retention sequential objects and both impact the simulated behavior of the design, the voltage statement and voltage specification have no simulation semantics defined.

```
voltage_domain_statement ::=
    POWER_VDD tag region_definitions ,
    voltage_specification
    stmt_end

voltage_specification ::=
    op_voltages
    [, vdd_level_sig ]

op_voltages ::=
    { real_literal {, real_literal} }
```

The voltage domain statement begins with the keyword `POWER_VDD`.

- `tag` — a mnemonic name for the VDD region.
- `region_definition` — the same as defined in section [Region Definitions](#).
- `op_voltages` — a list of one or more real values that specify the allowable voltages under which the domain may operate in units of volts. A list of voltage values provides the

ability to specify voltage domains where clock frequency is reduced to lower dynamic power consumption.

- `vdd_level_sig` — (optional) specifies a voltage level signal (or legal Verilog signal expression). This signal must be an integral type. Its value indicates which operating voltage level is in operation at any given point in time. The integral value shall match the positional value of the operating voltages with the value of 0 corresponding to the first operating voltage level specified, 1 corresponding to the 2nd operating voltage level specified, etc.

## Comments

A comment may appear anywhere on the line. The start of a comment is denoted by "--". The comment extends to the end of the line.

```
comment ::=
  -- <any text> CRLF
```

## Regular Expressions and Variables

In order to make it easy to group instances, signals and labels within instances, regular expressions are supported. The common subset of syntax and rules of Perl and Tcl are supported. More specifically, the following sets of meta-characters are supported.

- Single Character Matches — "." or "[ ]", for example:

```
"/ab.c/" -- a, b, any character, c
"/a[bc]d/" -- abd, or acd
```

- Multiple Character Matches — "\*" or "{n,m}", for example:

```
"/ab*c/" -- a, zero or more b's, c
"/ab{2,4}c/" # a, two to four b's, c
```

The only difference is that the regular expression will be delimited by quotation marks.

## Examples

The following matches all the instances 'DFF\_0' to 'DFF\_99' within the 'top/pd11' instance.

```
POWER PD0
top/pd11/"DFF_[0- 9]{1,2}",
(top/global_vdd1 & top/vd1/local_vdd_11);
```

The following matches all instances 'DFF\_0' to 'DFF\_99' for any sub-instance with a name beginning with 'pd2' under 'top'.

```
POWER PD2
top/"pd2.*"/"DFF_[0- 9]{1,2}",
```

```
(top/global_vdd1 & top/vd1/local_vdd_12);
```

## Rule Precedence

When more than one rule applies to a given power element, the rule defined at the lowest hierarchical level takes precedence over the rules defined at higher hierarchical level. This applies to power control statements, power model mapping statements and voltage domain statements.

When a rule is defined for an instance and a rule is defined for a signal belonging to that instance (at same hierarchical level), then, for that signal, the rule defined for the signal takes precedence over the rule defined for the process. In case more than one rule is defined at the same power element, a fatal error shall be reported and no verification will be terminated.



# Appendix F

## Supplemental Information

---

This appendix provides supplemental information on applications of Power Aware.

### Power Aware Verification of ARM-Based Designs

This section contains an application note written by Ping Yeung and Erich Marschner of Mentor Graphics Corporation.

#### Abstract

Power dissipation has become a key constraint for the design of today's complex chips. Minimizing power dissipation is essential for battery-powered portable devices, as well as for reducing cooling requirements for non-portable systems. Such minimization requires active power management built into a device.

In a System-on-Chip (SoC) design with active power management, various subsystems can be independently powered up or down, and/or powered at different voltage levels. It is important to verify that the SoC works correctly under active power management. When a given subsystem is turned off, its state will be lost, unless some or all of the state is explicitly retained during power down. When that subsystem is powered up again, it must either be reset, or it must restore its previous state from the retained state, or some combination thereof. When a subsystem is powered down, it must not interfere with the normal operation of the rest of the SoC.

Power aware verification is essential to verify the operation of a design under active power management, including the power management architecture, state retention and restoration of subsystems when powered down, and the interaction of subsystems in various power states. In this presentation, we summarize the challenges of power aware verification and describe the use of IEEE Std 1801™-2009 UPF to define power management architecture. We outline the requirements and essential coverage goals for verifying a power-managed ARM-based SoC design.

## Introduction

The continual scaling of transistors and the end of voltage scaling has made power one of the critical design constraints in the design flow. Trying to maintain performance levels and achieve faster speeds by scaling supply and threshold voltages increases the subthreshold leakage current due to its exponential relationship with the threshold voltage [1]. Leakage currents lead to power dissipation even when the circuit is not doing any useful work, which limits operation time between charges for battery-operated devices, and creates a heat dissipation problem for all devices.

Minimizing power dissipation starts with minimizing the dynamic power dissipation associated with the clock tree, by turning off the clock for subsystems that are not in use. This technique has been in use for many years. But at 90nm and below, static leakage becomes the dominant form of power dissipation. Active power management minimizes static leakage through various techniques, such as shutting off the power to unused subsystems or varying the supply voltage or threshold voltage for a given component to achieve the functionality and performance required with minimum power.

## Active Power Management

Active power management can be thought of as having three major aspects:

- the power management architecture, which involves the partitioning of the system into separately controlled power domains, and the logic required to power those domains; mediate their interactions, and control their behavior;
- the power managed behavior of the design, which involves the dynamic operation of power domains as they are powered up and down under active power management, as well as the dynamic interactions of those power domains to achieve system functionality;
- the power control logic that ultimately drives the control inputs to the power management architecture, which may be implemented in hardware or software or a combination thereof.

All three of these aspects need to be verified to ensure that the design will work properly under active power management. Ideally such verification should be done at the RTL stage. This enables verification of the active power management capability much more efficiently than would be possible at the gate level, which in turn allows more time for consideration of alternative power management architectures and simplifies debugging.

## Power Management Techniques

Several power management techniques are used to minimize power dissipation: clock gating, power gating, voltage scaling, and body biasing are four of them. Clock gating disables the

clock of an unused device, to eliminate dynamic power consumption by the clock tree. Power gating uses a current switch to cut off a circuit from its power supply rails during standby mode, to eliminate static leakage when the circuit is not in use. Voltage scaling changes the voltage and clock frequency to match the performance required for a given operation so as to minimize leakage. Body biasing changes the threshold voltage to reduce leakage current at the expense of slower switching times.

Power gating is one of the most common active power management techniques. Switching off the power to a subsystem when it is not in use eliminates the leakage current in that subsystem when it is powered down, and hence the overall leakage power dissipation through that subsystem is reduced. However, this technique also results in loss of state in the subsystem when it is switched off. Also, the outputs of a power domain can float to unpredictable values when they are powered down.

Another common technique is the use of different supply voltage levels for different subsystems. A subsystem that has a higher voltage supply can change state more quickly and therefore operate with higher performance, at the expense of higher static leakage and dynamic power. A subsystem with a lower voltage supply cannot change state as quickly, and consequently operates with lower performance, but also with less static leakage and dynamic power. This technique allows designers to minimize static leakage in areas where higher performance is not required.

Multiple voltage supplies can also be used for a single subsystem, for example, by enabling it to dynamically switch between a higher voltage supply and a lower voltage supply. This allows the system to select higher performance for that subsystem when necessary, but minimize static leakage when high performance is not required. Multi-voltage and power gating techniques can be combined to give a range of power/performance options.

All of these power management techniques must be implemented in a manner that preserves the intended functionality of the design. This requires creation of power management logic to ensure that the design operates correctly as the power supplies to its various components are switched on and off or switched between voltage levels. Since this power management logic could potentially affect the functionality of the design, it is important to verify the power management logic early in the design cycle, to avoid costly respins.

## Power Management Specification

The power management architecture for a given design could be defined as part of the design, and ultimately it will be a part of the design's implementation. A better approach, however, is to specify the power management architecture separate from the design. This simplifies exploration of alternative power management architectures, reduces the likelihood of unintended changes to the golden design functionality, and maintains the reusability of the design data. This is the approach supported by IEEE Std 1801<sup>TM</sup>-2009, "Standard for Design and Verification of Low Power Integrated Circuits." This standard is also known as the Unified Power Format (UPF) version 2.0. Initially developed by Accellera, UPF is currently supported by multiple vendors and is in use worldwide [5].

UPF provides the concepts and notation required to define the power management architecture for a design. A UPF specification can be used to drive the implementation of power management for a given design, during synthesis or subsequent implementation steps. A UPF specification can also be used to drive verification of power management, during RTL simulation, gate-level simulation, or even via static verification methods. The ability to use UPF in conjunction with RTL simulation enables early verification of the power management architecture. The ability to use UPF across all of these applications eases implementation and validation by enabling reuse of power management specifications throughout the flow.

UPF syntax is defined as an extension of Tcl [6], which enables UPF descriptions to leverage all of the control features of Tcl. UPF captures the power management architecture in a portable form for use in simulation, synthesis, and routing, reducing potential omissions during translation of that intent from tool to tool. Because it is separate from the HDL description and can be read by all of the tools in the flow, the UPF side file is as portable and interoperable as the logic design's HDL code.

The concepts introduced in the following sections are illustrated with the UPF commands used to specify them.

## Power Management Architecture

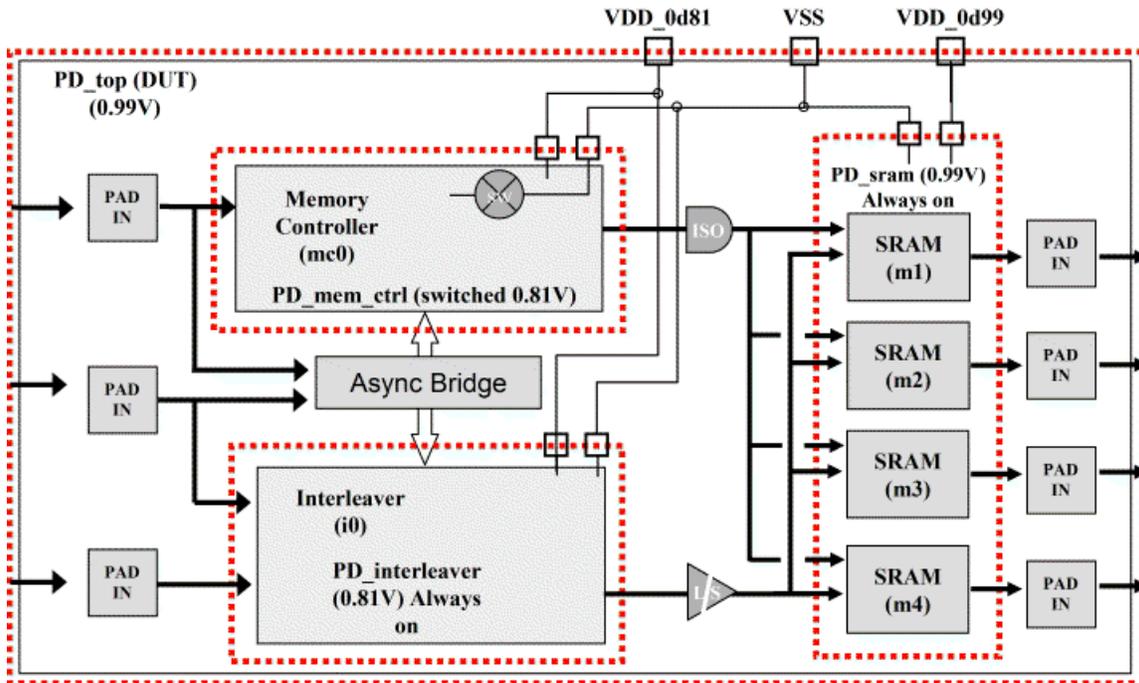
In order to employ active power management techniques such as power gating and multiple voltage supplies, the design must be partitioned into separate functional areas that can be independently powered. Additional logic must be inserted into the design to perform special functions such as power switching, state retention, isolation, and level shifting. These additional components constitute the power management architecture for a given system.

## Operating Modes

Designing the power management architecture for a given system starts with characterization of the functions and operating modes of the system. Since the goal of active power management is to optimize the use of power based on the function and performance required of the system at any given time, the first step involves identifying the distinct combinations of functionality and performance that will be required of the device in use. Analysis of the set of distinct operating modes allows the designer to determine how to partition the design into independently powered subsystems or subcomponents, so that any given operating mode can be supported by providing the necessary subset of system components with the appropriate power.

For example, [Figure F-1](#) shows a block diagram of a design that has two operating modes: ON and SLEEP.

Figure F-1. A Power-Managed Design



In the ON mode, it reads input data streams, interleaves them, and stores them in the memory before driving them onto outputs. In the SLEEP mode, it monitors inputs and maintains the state of its memory, but it does not process inputs.

## Power Domains

Each independently powered subsystem or subcomponent is called a power domain. At the RTL stage, a power domain is typically somewhat abstract, consisting of some or all of the RTL logic within a given portion of the design hierarchy. At the logical netlist stage, a power domain consists of a collection of cells that will share the same primary power and ground supplies. At the physical level, the cells associated with a given power domain may be placed in a contiguous region of a chip or distributed over multiple discontinuous regions of the chip.

The design in [Figure F-1](#) has several major components. These include the interleaver block, the memory controller block, and the memory itself. Each of these can be defined as a separate power domain. The top-level of the design is also a separate power domain. The dotted lines in [Figure F-1](#) indicate power domain boundaries. The following UPF commands would be used to define these power domains:

```
#-----
# Create power domains
#-----
create_power_domain PD_top
create_power_domain PD_interleaver -elements {i0}
create_power_domain PD_mem_ctrl -elements {mc0}
create_power_domain PD_sram -elements {m1 m2 m3 m4}
```

The `-elements` option on each command lists the instance names of the elements to be included in the specified power domain.

## Power Distribution

Each power domain may have one or more power supplies. The primary supply provides power for most of the functional elements in that domain. Additional supplies may provide power for retention, isolation, or level shifting cells associated with the power domain.

The primary supply may be a switched supply, which can be turned on and off via a control input to the switch. Either the VDD or VSS supply may be switched. A supply may be driven by multiple switches connected to the same voltage source. The switches are turned on incrementally, to minimize rush currents when the supply is switched on. A supply may also be driven by multiple switches connected to different voltage sources, so that the supply voltage level delivered to elements of the power domain may be varied. Switches may be on-chip or off-chip.

Power is distributed to power domains via supply ports interconnected by supply nets. Supply ports may represent external supplies or may be driven by internal supply sources. Supply ports are connected to supply nets, each of which is ultimately connected to a power domain. Each supply port has one or more supply states defined. The port may drive only one state at any given time. That state is propagated by the supply net connected to the port.

For the example in [Figure F-1](#), the following UPF commands could be used to define top-level supply ports, and to define and connect supply nets to those ports:

```
#-----  
# Create top level power domain supply ports  
#-----  
create_supply_port VDD_0d99 -domain PD_top  
create_supply_port VDD_0d81 -domain PD_top  
create_supply_port VSS -domain PD_top  
  
#-----  
# Create top level power domain supply nets  
#-----  
create_supply_net VDD_0d99 -domain PD_top  
create_supply_net VDD_0d81 -domain PD_top  
create_supply_net VSS -domain PD_top  
  
#-----  
# Connect top level power domain supply ports  
# to supply nets  
#-----  
connect_supply_net VDD_0d99 -ports VDD_0d99  
connect_supply_net VDD_0d81 -ports VDD_0d81  
connect_supply_net VSS -ports VSS
```

The following UPF command would be used to identify a particular pair of supply nets as the primary power and ground supplies for a given power domain:

```
#-----
# Set the default for top level power domain
#-----
set_domain_supply_net PD_top \
    -primary_power_net VDD_0d99 \
    -primary_ground_net VSS
```

Additional UPF commands could be used to propagate the top-level supply nets into subordinate power domains and to define a power switch to create a switched ground (VSS\_SW) for one of the power domains:

```
#-----
# Create sub domain supply nets
#-----
create_supply_net VDD_0d81 -domain PD_interleaver -reuse
create_supply_net VDD_0d81 -domain PD_mem_ctrl -reuse
create_supply_net VDD_0d99 -domain PD_sram -reuse

create_supply_net VSS -domain PD_interleaver -reuse
create_supply_net VSS -domain PD_mem_ctrl -reuse
create_supply_net VSS -domain PD_sram -reuse

#-----
# Create supply net for switch output
#-----
create_supply_net VSS_SW -domain PD_mem_ctrl

#-----
# Create power switch for memory controller domain
# - switch on ground side of supply network
#-----
create_power_switch mem_ctrl_sw \
    -domain PD_mem_ctrl \
    -output_supply_port {vout_p VSS_SW} \
    -input_supply_port {vin_p VSS} \
    -control_port {ctrl_p mc_pwr_c} \
    -on_state {normal_working vin_p {ctrl_p}} \
    -off_state {off_state {!ctrl_p}}
```

Power distribution logic may also include on-chip analog components such as regulators and sensors. A regulator takes an input supply voltage and generates a specific output voltage. A sensor monitors a supply rail and signals when the voltage has stabilized at its nominal value with respect to ground. Sensors enable construction of a feedback loop so that power control logic can determine when a power rail has completed transitioning. Analog components such as these are not specifiable in UPF, but can be modeled in HDL code using UPF package functions to model the ramp-up and ramp-down of power supplies as they switch on and off.

## Power States

UPF provides commands for defining a power state table that captures the possible power states of the system. The power state table defines system power states in terms of the states of supply ports or nets.

For the example in [Figure F-1](#), the following UPF commands define the possible states of the supply ports VDD\_0d81, VDD\_0d99, and VSS, as well as the switched ground supply VSS\_SW:

```
#-----  
# Define power states  
#-----  
add_port_state VDD_0d99 -state {ON 0.99 1.10 1.21}  
add_port_state VDD_0d99 -state {OFF off}  
  
add_port_state VDD_0d81 -state {ON 0.81 0.90 0.99}  
add_port_state VDD_0d81 -state {OFF off}  
  
add_port_state VSS      -state {ON 0 0 0}  
add_port_state VSS_SW   -state {ON 0} -state {OFF off}  
  
#-----  
# Create power state table  
#-----  
create_pst top_pst \  
    -supplies { VDD_0d99  VDD_0d81  VSS  VSS_SW }  
  
add_pst_state ON \  
    -pst top_pst -state {    ON          ON      ON      ON    }  
add_pst_state SLEEP \  
    -pst top_pst -state {    ON          ON      ON      OFF   }  
add_pst_state OFF \  
    -pst top_pst -state {    OFF         OFF     ON      OFF   }
```

The power states of the system in [Figure F-1](#) are defined in the above power state table. Note that these power states are the same as the operating modes of the system, plus the state in which the system is completely turned off.

## Isolation and Level Shifting

Even though each power domain may be independently powered on and off, their logical and physical connections to other power domains remain; therefore, when one domain is turned off, it is still connected logically and electrically to other domains. These connections between power domains require special cells to mediate the interaction between domains as their respective power states change. Two kinds of cells are involved: isolation cells, and level shifting cells.

Isolation cells ensure that signals coming from unpowered domains are clamped to a well-defined logic value while the source domain is powered down, so that any sink domain that is powered up sees reliable inputs. Depending upon the architecture of the design, and the

particular characteristics of a signal that crosses from one power domain to another (e.g., how many power domains it fans out to, and when those power domains are on or off with respect to the source domain), it may be appropriate to insert isolation cells at either the source of the signal or at its sink(s). However, since the isolation cell must be powered on when the source domain is powered off, isolation cells are typically powered by a separate, "always-on" supply voltage.

The following UPF commands specify the addition of isolation for the PD\_mem\_ctrl power domain in the example in [Figure F-1](#). The first command defines the supplies powering the isolation cell and specifies its clamp value. The second command defines the control signal for the isolation cell.

```
#-----
# Setup isolation strategy for memory controller
#-----

# Mem ctrl chip & write enables: clamp to '1'

set_isolation mem_ctrl_iso_1 \
  -domain PD_mem_ctrl \
  -isolation_power_net VDD_0d99 \
  -isolation_ground_net VSS \
  -clamp_value 1 \
  -elements {mc0/ceb mc0/web}

set_isolation_control mem_ctrl_iso_1 \
  -domain PD_mem_ctrl \
  -isolation_signal mc_iso_c \
  -isolation_sense high \
  -location parent
```

Level shifting cells ensure that a signal coming from a power domain operating at one voltage is correctly interpreted when it is received by a power domain operating at a different voltage. Depending upon the relative voltage levels of the two power domains, a level shifter may increase or decrease the operating voltage of the signal. As with isolation cells, level shifters may have separate power supplies that are always on, or they may be powered by the primary supplies of the source and sink domains, respectively.

```
#-----
# Define level shifters
#-----

set_level_shifter interleaver_ls_in \
  -domain PD_interleaver \
  -applies_to inputs \
  -location self

set_level_shifter interleaver_ls_out \
  -domain PD_interleaver \
  -applies_to outputs \
  -location parent
```

The UPF commands above specify addition of level shifters for the PD\_interleaver power domain in the example in [Figure F-1](#). The first command specifies addition of level shifters for inputs; the second command specifies addition of level shifters for outputs. Whether level shifters will actually be inserted depends upon the respective supply voltages of the source and sink domains involved.

## State Retention

When a power domain is powered down, any normal state elements within the power domain will lose their state. When the power domain is powered on again, the power domain must be brought to a predictable state again. This may involve resetting all state elements in the domain, or resetting some subset that will be sufficient to cause the rest of the domain to reach a well-defined state after a few clock cycles. Another alternative is to save the state of certain state elements before the domain is powered down, and restore those statements to their saved state after the power domain is powered up again.

Retention cells are special memory elements that preserve their data during power down. Such cells involve extra logic and possibly complex timing to save and restore their values across powered-down periods [2]. Various kinds of retention cells have been designed [2], [3], [4]. Some of these use balloon latch mechanisms [2], which are made up of high threshold transistors to minimize leakage through them. They are separated from the critical path of the design by transmission gates and thus are not required to be timing critical. Others depend on complex sequences of different controls to achieve data retention.

The following UPF command specifies where retention should occur in the example in [Figure F-1](#).

```
#-----  
# Setup retention strategy for mem cntrl  
#-----  
set_retention mem_ctrl_ret \  
  -domain PD_mem_ctrl \  
  -retention_power_net VDD_0d81 \  
  -save_signal {mc_save_c high} \  
  -restore_signal {mc_restore_c low}
```

This command identifies the power domain (PD\_mem\_ctrl) within which retention registers should be used, specifies the power supply used to maintain retained values, and specifies the control signals required for saving and restoring the values of retention registers.

## Power Managed Behavior

With the power management architecture implemented on top of the design, it should be possible to repeatedly power up each power domain and later power it down again. Each time a domain is powered up, it should reach a well-defined state from which to continue its

operations. That state may be the initial reset state, or a state saved before the power domain was last powered down, or a combination of the two.

While a power domain is powered down, its elements cannot drive their outputs to well-defined logic values. As a result, those outputs may float to 1 or float to 0, or may be at an intermediate value. In this situation, those outputs are considered corrupted. This is not a problem as long as no other active power domain sinks those corrupted values; otherwise logical and/or electrical problems could result. During the power down process, it is essential for the isolation cells in the design to be enabled before the domain's primary supply is shut off, for those isolation cells to clamp signals from the powered-down domain to appropriate values, and for the isolation cells to remain enabled until the shut-off domain's primary supply is turned on again.

Similarly, when two interconnected power domains have been put into respective power states that involve different supply voltages, the level shifters in the design must convert logic 1 signal voltage levels in the source domain to logic 1 signal voltage levels in the sink domain. Although level shifters function continuously and therefore do not need to be enabled, dynamic changes in the supply voltages for the respective power domains may result in unexpected situations.

## Power Control Logic

Power management may involve both software and hardware control. For example, a power control unit (PCU) can be specified in RTL internal to the SoC. The PCU may be under software control by an embedded processor. The combination of these power management controls drive the signals that define the PCN, based on the system's power management strategy—signaling power domains to retain state, enable isolation, power down (turn off switches), power up (turn on switches), disable isolation, and restore state.

Correct operation of the power management architecture depends upon correct sequencing of power control signals. For example, outputs of a domain must be isolated before the power is shut off, and must remain isolated until after power is turned on again. Thus the control signal initiating isolation must come before the control signal that turns off the power switch. Similarly, the control signal that turns on the power switch must occur before the control signal that terminates isolation. In fact, turning power on and off may involve handshaking between the PCU and the supply source (or a sensor monitoring the supply) to ensure that voltage-dependent delays in ramping up or down the power supply are factored into control signal sequencing.

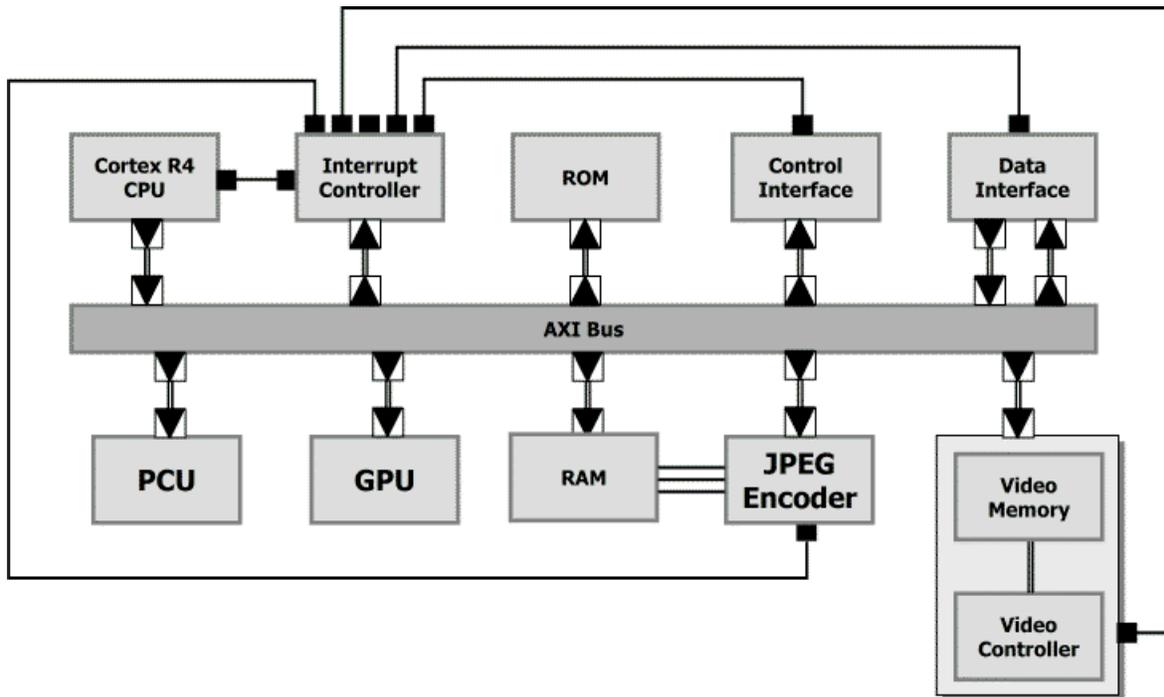
## Power Aware Verification Flow

Verifying RTL-level specification of active power management for a given design involves several steps. First, we need to verify that the power management architecture is correctly structured, given the operating modes of the device and the power states that have been defined to reflect those modes. Second, we need to verify that the design (both each power domain individually and all of them collectively) behave correctly when power management control

signals are given in the correct sequence. Third, we need to verify that the power control logic will always generate power control signals in the correct sequence.

Figure F-2 shows the high-level design of an ARM-based SoC with active power management. The above verification steps as applied to this example are described below.

**Figure F-2. An ARM-based SoC with Active Power Management**



This design consists of multiple functional units communicating over the AXI bus. Each functional unit may be defined as a separate power domain, or even as a collection of power domains. A UPF file for this design would specify the power management architecture for the whole system, including the specific requirements for power distribution, switching, and state retention for each power domain, and the requirements for isolation and level shifting between interacting power domains. The Power Control Unit (PCU) is a hardware implementation of power control logic that drives power control signals for each domain in the correct order. The Cortex R4 CPU is an embedded ARM processor that drives system-level power state changes by sending transactions to the PCU.

## Verifying the Power Management Architecture

Verifying the sufficiency of the power management architecture can be done in part through static analysis. Given a complete definition of the power domains and power states for a given design, it is relatively straightforward to verify that the necessary isolation cells and level shifters are present (or implied by a UPF specification) to ensure that the power domains will interact correctly and will not be adversely affected when their neighboring power domains are

powered down. Static analysis can also ensure that the necessary supply structures are present to provide the ability to control power to each power domain.

However, static analysis is not always possible. Depending upon the sequencing of power state changes, and the ramping of power supplies as they transition, there may be a requirement for level shifters that is not obvious from the power state table. Also, the power state table may not be complete, and power states that are not defined might actually occur during operation of the device. Finally, external supply sources may be switched or may vary in voltage beyond what is defined in the power state table. For these and other reasons, simulation is often required. In this case, power aware simulation is necessary, to ensure that the power management architecture and its controls are taken into account during simulation.

Power Aware simulation enables functional verification of power management in the context of an RTL design. A power aware simulation run does the following:

- Compiles the design and UPF specifications
- Infers sequential elements from the RTL design (registers, latches and memories)
- Applies the UPF-specified power management architecture to the RTL design
- Augments the simulation model with appropriate power aware models
- Dynamically modifies the RTL behavior to reflect the impact of active power management.

Using the UPF and sequential element information, the simulator is able to augment the normal RTL behavior with the UPF-specified power aware behavior (power distribution and control, retention, corruption, and isolation). This involves selecting the appropriate simulation models to implement the UPF-specified power management architecture. It may also involve recognizing and integrating user-supplied power aware simulation models.

## Verifying Power Managed Behavior

Power aware simulation can be used to visualize the effects of active power management on the dynamic behavior of the design, as well as visualizing the behavior of the power management architecture itself under control of power management logic. In a power aware simulation, the internal state and outputs of a power domain will be set to X to reflect the corruption of those signals when the primary supply to that domain is turned off. When the supply is turned on again, the X values will be replaced as the power domain reinitializes or has its state restored. Signals driven by outputs of a powered-down domain should be clamped to 0 or 1, so that downstream power domains see a well-defined value and won't be affected by corrupted outputs of a power domain that has been powered down. Retention should be evident in that the state of signals following power up will correspond to the state of signals prior to the previous power down.

Visualizing the effects of active power management helps the designer confirm that all of the necessary power domains and power states required to implement the operation modes of this

device have been defined, and that all the necessary isolation, level-shifting, and retention cells necessary to enable power management have been added. If there are errors in the power management architecture, they will very likely cause signal corruption that does not go away after power up, which in turn will lead to functional errors in the design.

Debugging power management errors can be performed by tracking corruption of signals in the waveform view, but that method is tedious and error-prone. A much more effective method is the use of assertions to check for correct operation of the design under active power management. For example, an assertion to check that an output of a power domain is clamped to the correct value when the power domain is powered down will immediately catch any error related to the clamp value, or the powering of the isolation cell involved, rather than just generating an X and letting it propagate. Such assertions can be automatically generated by the power aware simulator.

## Verifying Power Control Logic

Power aware simulation can also be used to verify the control logic driving the power management architecture, provided that the control logic is part of the design rather than being implemented in a testbench. For software-based power control logic, simulation is the only method available. In particular, hardware/software co-simulation is necessary if the power control logic is split between hardware and software components, as is often the case. For hardware-based power control logic, such as a power control unit, another alternative is available.

Formal verification is particularly suited to verifying complex control logic. In contrast to simulation, which runs one input sequence at a time to test a device, formal verification considers all valid input sequences in one pass. A formal verification tool can therefore identify all possible behaviors of the power control logic, which enables it to automatically find any corner cases in which the generated control sequences may not be complete or in the correct order. Formal verification is driven by assertions, so use of formal verification requires creation of assertions about the expected behavior of the power control unit. Although this takes some effort, the ability to thoroughly verify the power control logic makes it worthwhile.

## Summary

Active power management is becoming a necessary part of today's SoC designs. To add active power management to a design and verify that it is working correctly, it is critical to have a well-defined methodology that addresses all aspects of active power management. The methodology needs to support defining and verifying an appropriate power management architecture, verifying that the design behaves correctly under the power management architecture, and verifying that the power control signals controlling the power management architecture are generated correctly. IEEE Std 1801™-2009 UPF supports such a methodology, as does static analysis of power management architecture, power-aware simulation of power-managed designs, and formal verification of power control logic. These methods provide a comprehensive solution for defining and verifying active power management.

## Acknowledgements

The authors would like to acknowledge the thoughtful commentary and suggestions for improvement provided by Barry Pangrle on the penultimate draft of this paper.

## References

1. N.S. Kim, T. Austin, T. Blaauw, T. Mudge, K. Flautner, H.S. Hu, M.J. Irwin, M. Kandemir, and V. Narayanan. Leakage current: Moore's law meets static power. *IEEE Computer*, 36(12):68--75, 2003.
2. S. Shigematsu, S. Mutoh, Y. Matsuya, Y. Tanabe and J. Yamada, "A 1-V High-Speed MTCMOS Circuit Scheme for Power-Down Application Circuits," *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, Vol. 32, No. 6, pp. 861--869, 1997.
3. Hyo-Sig Won; Kyo-Sun Kim; Kwang-Ok Jeong; Ki-Tae Park; Kyu-Myung Choi; Jeong-Taek Kong, "An MTCMOS design methodology and its application to mobile computing," *Low Power Electronics and Design*, 2003. ISLPED '03. Proceedings of the 2003 International Symposium on , vol., no., pp. 110-115, 25-27 Aug. 2003.
4. Zyuban, V.; Kosonocky, S.V., "Low power integrated scan-retention mechanism," *Low Power Electronics and Design*, 2002. ISLPED '02. Proceedings of the 2002 International Symposium on , vol., no., pp. 98-102, 2002.
5. IEEE 1801™-2009, "Standard for Design and Verification of Low Power Integrated Circuits", IEEE.
6. Tcl/Tk Documentation, Tcl Developer Xchange, <http://www.tcl.tk>.



---

**— A —**

Accellera, 175  
Automatic detection, 47

**— B —**

Backus-Naur Format, 287  
BNF, 287

**— D —**

Detection, automatic, 47  
Design flow, 14

**— F —**

Feedthrough, 155

**— G —**

Gate-level simulation, 40

**— H —**

Hard macro, 150

**— I —**

IEEE standard for low power, 18

**— L —**

Liberty libraries, 41  
    database, 45  
Low power, 13  
    IEEE standard for, 18  
    working group of IEEE, 19  
Lower boundary ports, 225

**— M —**

Macro, hard, 150  
Macromodels, 150  
Messages, 139  
MTI\_LIBERTY\_PATH, 47  
Multi-voltage analysis, 142

**— N —**

Named events, 164

**— P —**

PA-GL, 13  
PA-GLS  
    automatic detection, 47  
PA-RTL, 13  
PCF (Power Configuration File), 19, 285, 286  
Power Aware, 13  
    documentation, 16  
Power Aware verification, 174  
Power Configuration File, 19, 285, 286  
Power gating, 13  
Power specification file, 19  
Power State Table (PST), 143, 202  
PST, 143, 202

**— U —**

UCDB  
    in Power Aware simulation, 121  
Unified Power Format (UPF), 19, 173, 285  
UPF, 19, 173, 174, 285  
    supported commands, 176  
    unsupported commands, 176

**— V —**

Value conversion table (VCT), 266  
VCT, 266  
Verilog  
    named events, 164  
Voltage level-shifting, 142

**— W —**

Wave window, 27

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

---

# End-User License Agreement

The latest version of the End-User License Agreement is available on-line at:  
[www.mentor.com/eula](http://www.mentor.com/eula)

## IMPORTANT INFORMATION

**USE OF ALL SOFTWARE IS SUBJECT TO LICENSE RESTRICTIONS. CAREFULLY READ THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT BEFORE USING THE PRODUCTS. USE OF SOFTWARE INDICATES CUSTOMER'S COMPLETE AND UNCONDITIONAL ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT. ANY ADDITIONAL OR DIFFERENT PURCHASE ORDER TERMS AND CONDITIONS SHALL NOT APPLY.**

## END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("Agreement")

This is a legal agreement concerning the use of Software (as defined in Section 2) and hardware (collectively "Products") between the company acquiring the Products ("Customer"), and the Mentor Graphics entity that issued the corresponding quotation or, if no quotation was issued, the applicable local Mentor Graphics entity ("Mentor Graphics"). Except for license agreements related to the subject matter of this license agreement which are physically signed by Customer and an authorized representative of Mentor Graphics, this Agreement and the applicable quotation contain the parties' entire understanding relating to the subject matter and supersede all prior or contemporaneous agreements. If Customer does not agree to these terms and conditions, promptly return or, in the case of Software received electronically, certify destruction of Software and all accompanying items within five days after receipt of Software and receive a full refund of any license fee paid.

### 1. ORDERS, FEES AND PAYMENT.

- 1.1. To the extent Customer (or if agreed by Mentor Graphics, Customer's appointed third party buying agent) places and Mentor Graphics accepts purchase orders pursuant to this Agreement ("Order(s)"), each Order will constitute a contract between Customer and Mentor Graphics, which shall be governed solely and exclusively by the terms and conditions of this Agreement, any applicable addenda and the applicable quotation, whether or not these documents are referenced on the Order. Any additional or conflicting terms and conditions appearing on an Order will not be effective unless agreed in writing by an authorized representative of Customer and Mentor Graphics.
- 1.2. Amounts invoiced will be paid, in the currency specified on the applicable invoice, within 30 days from the date of such invoice. Any past due invoices will be subject to the imposition of interest charges in the amount of one and one-half percent per month or the applicable legal rate currently in effect, whichever is lower. Prices do not include freight, insurance, customs duties, taxes or other similar charges, which Mentor Graphics will state separately in the applicable invoice(s). Unless timely provided with a valid certificate of exemption or other evidence that items are not taxable, Mentor Graphics will invoice Customer for all applicable taxes including, but not limited to, VAT, GST, sales tax and service tax. Customer will make all payments free and clear of, and without reduction for, any withholding or other taxes; any such taxes imposed on payments by Customer hereunder will be Customer's sole responsibility. If Customer appoints a third party to place purchase orders and/or make payments on Customer's behalf, Customer shall be liable for payment under Orders placed by such third party in the event of default.
- 1.3. All Products are delivered FCA factory (Incoterms 2000), freight prepaid and invoiced to Customer, except Software delivered electronically, which shall be deemed delivered when made available to Customer for download. Mentor Graphics retains a security interest in all Products delivered under this Agreement, to secure payment of the purchase price of such Products, and Customer agrees to sign any documents that Mentor Graphics determines to be necessary or convenient for use in filing or perfecting such security interest. Mentor Graphics' delivery of Software by electronic means is subject to Customer's provision of both a primary and an alternate e-mail address.

2. **GRANT OF LICENSE.** The software installed, downloaded, or otherwise acquired by Customer under this Agreement, including any updates, modifications, revisions, copies, documentation and design data ("Software") are copyrighted, trade secret and confidential information of Mentor Graphics or its licensors, who maintain exclusive title to all Software and retain all rights not expressly granted by this Agreement. Mentor Graphics grants to Customer, subject to payment of applicable license fees, a nontransferable, nonexclusive license to use Software solely: (a) in machine-readable, object-code form (except as provided in Subsection 5.2); (b) for Customer's internal business purposes; (c) for the term of the license; and (d) on the computer hardware and at the site authorized by Mentor Graphics. A site is restricted to a one-half mile (800 meter) radius. Customer may have Software temporarily used by an employee for telecommuting purposes from locations other than a Customer office, such as the employee's residence, an airport or hotel, provided that such employee's primary place of employment is the site where the Software is authorized for use. Mentor Graphics' standard policies and programs, which vary depending on Software, license fees paid or services purchased, apply to the following: (a) relocation of Software; (b) use of Software, which may be limited, for example, to execution of a single session by a single user on the authorized hardware or for a restricted period of time (such limitations may be technically implemented through the use of authorization codes or similar devices); and (c) support services provided, including eligibility to receive telephone support, updates, modifications, and revisions. For the avoidance of doubt, if Customer requests any change or enhancement to Software, whether in the course of receiving support or consulting services, evaluating Software, performing beta testing or otherwise, any inventions, product

improvements, modifications or developments made by Mentor Graphics (at Mentor Graphics' sole discretion) will be the exclusive property of Mentor Graphics.

3. **ESC SOFTWARE.** If Customer purchases a license to use development or prototyping tools of Mentor Graphics' Embedded Software Channel ("ESC"), Mentor Graphics grants to Customer a nontransferable, nonexclusive license to reproduce and distribute executable files created using ESC compilers, including the ESC run-time libraries distributed with ESC C and C++ compiler Software that are linked into a composite program as an integral part of Customer's compiled computer program, provided that Customer distributes these files only in conjunction with Customer's compiled computer program. Mentor Graphics does NOT grant Customer any right to duplicate, incorporate or embed copies of Mentor Graphics' real-time operating systems or other embedded software products into Customer's products or applications without first signing or otherwise agreeing to a separate agreement with Mentor Graphics for such purpose.
4. **BETA CODE.**
  - 4.1. Portions or all of certain Software may contain code for experimental testing and evaluation ("Beta Code"), which may not be used without Mentor Graphics' explicit authorization. Upon Mentor Graphics' authorization, Mentor Graphics grants to Customer a temporary, nontransferable, nonexclusive license for experimental use to test and evaluate the Beta Code without charge for a limited period of time specified by Mentor Graphics. This grant and Customer's use of the Beta Code shall not be construed as marketing or offering to sell a license to the Beta Code, which Mentor Graphics may choose not to release commercially in any form.
  - 4.2. If Mentor Graphics authorizes Customer to use the Beta Code, Customer agrees to evaluate and test the Beta Code under normal conditions as directed by Mentor Graphics. Customer will contact Mentor Graphics periodically during Customer's use of the Beta Code to discuss any malfunctions or suggested improvements. Upon completion of Customer's evaluation and testing, Customer will send to Mentor Graphics a written evaluation of the Beta Code, including its strengths, weaknesses and recommended improvements.
  - 4.3. Customer agrees to maintain Beta Code in confidence and shall restrict access to the Beta Code, including the methods and concepts utilized therein, solely to those employees and Customer location(s) authorized by Mentor Graphics to perform beta testing. Customer agrees that any written evaluations and all inventions, product improvements, modifications or developments that Mentor Graphics conceived or made during or subsequent to this Agreement, including those based partly or wholly on Customer's feedback, will be the exclusive property of Mentor Graphics. Mentor Graphics will have exclusive rights, title and interest in all such property. The provisions of this Subsection 4.3 shall survive termination of this Agreement.
5. **RESTRICTIONS ON USE.**
  - 5.1. Customer may copy Software only as reasonably necessary to support the authorized use. Each copy must include all notices and legends embedded in Software and affixed to its medium and container as received from Mentor Graphics. All copies shall remain the property of Mentor Graphics or its licensors. Customer shall maintain a record of the number and primary location of all copies of Software, including copies merged with other software, and shall make those records available to Mentor Graphics upon request. Customer shall not make Products available in any form to any person other than Customer's employees and on-site contractors, excluding Mentor Graphics competitors, whose job performance requires access and who are under obligations of confidentiality. Customer shall take appropriate action to protect the confidentiality of Products and ensure that any person permitted access does not disclose or use it except as permitted by this Agreement. Customer shall give Mentor Graphics written notice of any unauthorized disclosure or use of the Products as soon as Customer learns or becomes aware of such unauthorized disclosure or use. Except as otherwise permitted for purposes of interoperability as specified by applicable and mandatory local law, Customer shall not reverse-assemble, reverse-compile, reverse-engineer or in any way derive any source code from Software. Log files, data files, rule files and script files generated by or for the Software (collectively "Files"), including without limitation files containing Standard Verification Rule Format ("SVRF") and Tcl Verification Format ("TVF") which are Mentor Graphics' proprietary syntaxes for expressing process rules, constitute or include confidential information of Mentor Graphics. Customer may share Files with third parties, excluding Mentor Graphics competitors, provided that the confidentiality of such Files is protected by written agreement at least as well as Customer protects other information of a similar nature or importance, but in any case with at least reasonable care. Customer may use Files containing SVRF or TVF only with Mentor Graphics products. Under no circumstances shall Customer use Software or Files or allow their use for the purpose of developing, enhancing or marketing any product that is in any way competitive with Software, or disclose to any third party the results of, or information pertaining to, any benchmark.
  - 5.2. If any Software or portions thereof are provided in source code form, Customer will use the source code only to correct software errors and enhance or modify the Software for the authorized use. Customer shall not disclose or permit disclosure of source code, in whole or in part, including any of its methods or concepts, to anyone except Customer's employees or contractors, excluding Mentor Graphics competitors, with a need to know. Customer shall not copy or compile source code in any manner except to support this authorized use.
  - 5.3. Customer may not assign this Agreement or the rights and duties under it, or relocate, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Products, whether by operation of law or otherwise ("Attempted Transfer"), without Mentor Graphics' prior written consent and payment of Mentor Graphics' then-current applicable relocation and/or transfer fees. Any Attempted Transfer without Mentor Graphics' prior written consent shall be a material breach of this Agreement and may, at Mentor Graphics' option, result in the immediate termination of the Agreement and/or the licenses granted under this Agreement. The terms of this Agreement, including without limitation the licensing and assignment provisions, shall be binding upon Customer's permitted successors in interest and assigns.

5.4. The provisions of this Section 5 shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

6. **SUPPORT SERVICES.** To the extent Customer purchases support services, Mentor Graphics will provide Customer updates and technical support for the Products, at the Customer site(s) for which support is purchased, in accordance with Mentor Graphics' then current End-User Support Terms located at <http://supportnet.mentor.com/about/legal/>.
7. **AUTOMATIC CHECK FOR UPDATES; PRIVACY.** Technological measures in Software may communicate with servers of Mentor Graphics or its contractors for the purpose of checking for and notifying the user of updates and to ensure that the Software in use is licensed in compliance with this Agreement. Mentor Graphics will not collect any personally identifiable data in this process and will not disclose any data collected to any third party without the prior written consent of Customer, except to Mentor Graphics' outside attorneys or as may be required by a court of competent jurisdiction.
8. **LIMITED WARRANTY.**
  - 8.1. Mentor Graphics warrants that during the warranty period its standard, generally supported Products, when properly installed, will substantially conform to the functional specifications set forth in the applicable user manual. Mentor Graphics does not warrant that Products will meet Customer's requirements or that operation of Products will be uninterrupted or error free. The warranty period is 90 days starting on the 15th day after delivery or upon installation, whichever first occurs. Customer must notify Mentor Graphics in writing of any nonconformity within the warranty period. For the avoidance of doubt, this warranty applies only to the initial shipment of Software under an Order and does not renew or reset, for example, with the delivery of (a) Software updates or (b) authorization codes or alternate Software under a transaction involving Software re-mix. This warranty shall not be valid if Products have been subject to misuse, unauthorized modification or improper installation. MENTOR GRAPHICS' ENTIRE LIABILITY AND CUSTOMER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY SHALL BE, AT MENTOR GRAPHICS' OPTION, EITHER (A) REFUND OF THE PRICE PAID UPON RETURN OF THE PRODUCTS TO MENTOR GRAPHICS OR (B) MODIFICATION OR REPLACEMENT OF THE PRODUCTS THAT DO NOT MEET THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, PROVIDED CUSTOMER HAS OTHERWISE COMPLIED WITH THIS AGREEMENT. MENTOR GRAPHICS MAKES NO WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO: (A) SERVICES; (B) PRODUCTS PROVIDED AT NO CHARGE; OR (C) BETA CODE; ALL OF WHICH ARE PROVIDED "AS IS."
  - 8.2. THE WARRANTIES SET FORTH IN THIS SECTION 8 ARE EXCLUSIVE. NEITHER MENTOR GRAPHICS NOR ITS LICENSORS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, WITH RESPECT TO PRODUCTS PROVIDED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT. MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY.
9. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** EXCEPT WHERE THIS EXCLUSION OR RESTRICTION OF LIABILITY WOULD BE VOID OR INEFFECTIVE UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MENTOR GRAPHICS OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE FOR INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING LOST PROFITS OR SAVINGS) WHETHER BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY, EVEN IF MENTOR GRAPHICS OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT SHALL MENTOR GRAPHICS' OR ITS LICENSORS' LIABILITY UNDER THIS AGREEMENT EXCEED THE AMOUNT RECEIVED FROM CUSTOMER FOR THE HARDWARE, SOFTWARE LICENSE OR SERVICE GIVING RISE TO THE CLAIM. IN THE CASE WHERE NO AMOUNT WAS PAID, MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION 9 SHALL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT.
10. **HAZARDOUS APPLICATIONS.** CUSTOMER ACKNOWLEDGES IT IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR TESTING ITS PRODUCTS USED IN APPLICATIONS WHERE THE FAILURE OR INACCURACY OF ITS PRODUCTS MIGHT RESULT IN DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY ("HAZARDOUS APPLICATIONS"). NEITHER MENTOR GRAPHICS NOR ITS LICENSORS SHALL BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES RESULTING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF MENTOR GRAPHICS PRODUCTS IN OR FOR HAZARDOUS APPLICATIONS. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION 10 SHALL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT.
11. **INDEMNIFICATION.** CUSTOMER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS FROM ANY CLAIMS, LOSS, COST, DAMAGE, EXPENSE OR LIABILITY, INCLUDING ATTORNEYS' FEES, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF PRODUCTS AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION 10. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION 11 SHALL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT.
12. **INFRINGEMENT.**
  - 12.1. Mentor Graphics will defend or settle, at its option and expense, any action brought against Customer in the United States, Canada, Japan, or member state of the European Union which alleges that any standard, generally supported Product acquired by Customer hereunder infringes a patent or copyright or misappropriates a trade secret in such jurisdiction. Mentor Graphics will pay costs and damages finally awarded against Customer that are attributable to the action. Customer understands and agrees that as conditions to Mentor Graphics' obligations under this section Customer must: (a) notify Mentor Graphics promptly in writing of the action; (b) provide Mentor Graphics all reasonable information and assistance to settle or defend the action; and (c) grant Mentor Graphics sole authority and control of the defense or settlement of the action.

- 12.2. If a claim is made under Subsection 12.1 Mentor Graphics may, at its option and expense, (a) replace or modify the Product so that it becomes noninfringing; (b) procure for Customer the right to continue using the Product; or (c) require the return of the Product and refund to Customer any purchase price or license fee paid, less a reasonable allowance for use.
- 12.3. Mentor Graphics has no liability to Customer if the action is based upon: (a) the combination of Software or hardware with any product not furnished by Mentor Graphics; (b) the modification of the Product other than by Mentor Graphics; (c) the use of other than a current unaltered release of Software; (d) the use of the Product as part of an infringing process; (e) a product that Customer makes, uses, or sells; (f) any Beta Code or Product provided at no charge; (g) any software provided by Mentor Graphics' licensors who do not provide such indemnification to Mentor Graphics' customers; or (h) infringement by Customer that is deemed willful. In the case of (h), Customer shall reimburse Mentor Graphics for its reasonable attorney fees and other costs related to the action.
- 12.4. THIS SECTION 12 IS SUBJECT TO SECTION 9 ABOVE AND STATES THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS FOR DEFENSE, SETTLEMENT AND DAMAGES, AND CUSTOMER'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY, WITH RESPECT TO ANY ALLEGED PATENT OR COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT OR TRADE SECRET MISAPPROPRIATION BY ANY PRODUCT PROVIDED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT.
13. **TERMINATION AND EFFECT OF TERMINATION.** If a Software license was provided for limited term use, such license will automatically terminate at the end of the authorized term.
  - 13.1. Mentor Graphics may terminate this Agreement and/or any license granted under this Agreement immediately upon written notice if Customer: (a) exceeds the scope of the license or otherwise fails to comply with the licensing or confidentiality provisions of this Agreement, or (b) becomes insolvent, files a bankruptcy petition, institutes proceedings for liquidation or winding up or enters into an agreement to assign its assets for the benefit of creditors. For any other material breach of any provision of this Agreement, Mentor Graphics may terminate this Agreement and/or any license granted under this Agreement upon 30 days written notice if Customer fails to cure the breach within the 30 day notice period. Termination of this Agreement or any license granted hereunder will not affect Customer's obligation to pay for Products shipped or licenses granted prior to the termination, which amounts shall be payable immediately upon the date of termination.
  - 13.2. Upon termination of this Agreement, the rights and obligations of the parties shall cease except as expressly set forth in this Agreement. Upon termination, Customer shall ensure that all use of the affected Products ceases, and shall return hardware and either return to Mentor Graphics or destroy Software in Customer's possession, including all copies and documentation, and certify in writing to Mentor Graphics within ten business days of the termination date that Customer no longer possesses any of the affected Products or copies of Software in any form.
14. **EXPORT.** The Products provided hereunder are subject to regulation by local laws and United States government agencies, which prohibit export or diversion of certain products and information about the products to certain countries and certain persons. Customer agrees that it will not export Products in any manner without first obtaining all necessary approval from appropriate local and United States government agencies.
15. **U.S. GOVERNMENT LICENSE RIGHTS.** Software was developed entirely at private expense. All Software is commercial computer software within the meaning of the applicable acquisition regulations. Accordingly, pursuant to US FAR 48 CFR 12.212 and DFAR 48 CFR 227.7202, use, duplication and disclosure of the Software by or for the U.S. Government or a U.S. Government subcontractor is subject solely to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement, except for provisions which are contrary to applicable mandatory federal laws.
16. **THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY.** Mentor Graphics Corporation, Mentor Graphics (Ireland) Limited, Microsoft Corporation and other licensors may be third party beneficiaries of this Agreement with the right to enforce the obligations set forth herein.
17. **REVIEW OF LICENSE USAGE.** Customer will monitor the access to and use of Software. With prior written notice and during Customer's normal business hours, Mentor Graphics may engage an internationally recognized accounting firm to review Customer's software monitoring system and records deemed relevant by the internationally recognized accounting firm to confirm Customer's compliance with the terms of this Agreement or U.S. or other local export laws. Such review may include FLEXlm or FLEXnet (or successor product) report log files that Customer shall capture and provide at Mentor Graphics' request. Customer shall make records available in electronic format and shall fully cooperate with data gathering to support the license review. Mentor Graphics shall bear the expense of any such review unless a material non-compliance is revealed. Mentor Graphics shall treat as confidential information all information gained as a result of any request or review and shall only use or disclose such information as required by law or to enforce its rights under this Agreement. The provisions of this Section 17 shall survive the termination of this Agreement.
18. **CONTROLLING LAW, JURISDICTION AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION.** The owners of certain Mentor Graphics intellectual property licensed under this Agreement are located in Ireland and the United States. To promote consistency around the world, disputes shall be resolved as follows: excluding conflict of laws rules, this Agreement shall be governed by and construed under the laws of the State of Oregon, USA, if Customer is located in North or South America, and the laws of Ireland if Customer is located outside of North or South America. All disputes arising out of or in relation to this Agreement shall be submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of Portland, Oregon when the laws of Oregon apply, or Dublin, Ireland when the laws of Ireland apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, all disputes in Asia arising out of or in relation to this Agreement shall be resolved by arbitration in Singapore before a single arbitrator to be appointed by the chairman of the Singapore International Arbitration Centre ("SIAC") to be conducted in the English language, in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the SIAC in effect at the time of the dispute, which rules are deemed to be incorporated by reference in this section. This section shall not

restrict Mentor Graphics' right to bring an action against Customer in the jurisdiction where Customer's place of business is located. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods does not apply to this Agreement.

19. **SEVERABILITY.** If any provision of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, such provision shall be severed from this Agreement and the remaining provisions will remain in full force and effect.
20. **MISCELLANEOUS.** This Agreement contains the parties' entire understanding relating to its subject matter and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous agreements, including but not limited to any purchase order terms and conditions. Some Software may contain code distributed under a third party license agreement that may provide additional rights to Customer. Please see the applicable Software documentation for details. This Agreement may only be modified in writing by authorized representatives of the parties. Waiver of terms or excuse of breach must be in writing and shall not constitute subsequent consent, waiver or excuse.

Rev. 100615, Part No. 246066